Sanskrit for Beginners

A simple and comprehensive guide

Generated on 9 October 2022.
For the latest version, see https://learnsanskrit.org/guide.
## Contents

Preface to the print edition ............................................. 6

0 Introduction ............................................................... 7
  0.1 For beginners ......................................................... 8
  0.2 For experts ........................................................... 13

1 Core lessons ............................................................... 18
  1.1 The Sanskrit language .............................................. 19
  1.2 Basic vowels ......................................................... 21
  1.3 Short and long vowels ............................................ 25
  1.4 Semivowels .......................................................... 29
  1.5 Compound vowels ................................................. 31
  1.6 Consonants .......................................................... 36
  1.7 anusvāra and visarga ............................................... 43
  1.8 Syllables ............................................................ 47
  1.9 Sandhi ................................................................. 51
  1.10 Sentences ........................................................... 58
  1.11 Nominals ............................................................ 62
  1.12 Verbs ................................................................. 70
  1.13 Uninflected words ................................................ 78
  1.14 Prefixes ............................................................. 82
  1.15 Suffixes .............................................................. 86
  1.16 Compounds ........................................................ 90
  1.17 Review ............................................................... 93

2 Sounds ............................................................................ 100
  2.1 The sound system ................................................... 101
  2.2 Vowels ................................................................. 102
  2.3 Consonants .......................................................... 107
  2.4 Other sounds ......................................................... 111
  2.5 Modern pronunciation .......................................... 113

3 Sandhi ........................................................................... 115
  3.1 The sandhi system .................................................. 116
  3.2 Vowel sandhi ......................................................... 118
3.3 visarga sandhi ........................................ 124
3.4 Consonant sandhi between words .................. 130
3.5 Consonant sandhi within a word .................... 138

4 Nominals 1: Normal stems .............................. 142
4.1 The nominal system ................................ 143
4.2 Basic nominal endings ............................... 151
4.3 -a stems ........................................... 157
4.4 -ā, -ī, and -ū stems ............................... 161
4.5 -i and -u stems ................................... 166
4.6 -ṛ stems ........................................... 175
4.7 -ai, -o, and -au stems ........................... 182
4.8 Consonant stems ................................... 186

5 Nominals 2: Pronouns and numbers .................. 200
5.1 asmad and yuṣmad ................................. 201
5.2 tad, etad, idam, and adas ......................... 205
5.3 kim and yad ....................................... 213
5.4 Pronominal adjectives .............................. 221
5.5 Number words .................................... 223

6 Verbs 1: Special tense-moods ......................... 238
6.1 Special tense-moods ............................... 239
6.2 The present tense ................................ 243
6.3 The command mood ................................ 246
6.4 The ordinary past tense ............................ 248
6.5 The potential mood ................................ 251
6.6 ātmanepada ....................................... 254
6.7 The bhū, div, tud, and cur classes ................. 259
6.8 The su, tan, and krī classes ....................... 266
6.9 The ad and rudh classes ........................... 275
6.10 The hu class ..................................... 286
6.11 karmāṇi and bhāve prayoga ...................... 291

7 Verbs 2: Other tense-moods ......................... 296
7.1 Other tense-moods ................................ 297
7.2 The simple future tense ............................ 300
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>7.3</td>
<td>The conditional mood</td>
<td>303</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.4</td>
<td>The distant future tense</td>
<td>305</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.5</td>
<td>The distant past tense</td>
<td>308</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.6</td>
<td>The recent past tense</td>
<td>319</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.7</td>
<td>The blessing mood</td>
<td>322</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Verbs 3: Derived roots</td>
<td>325</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.1</td>
<td>Causal roots</td>
<td>326</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.2</td>
<td>Desiderative roots</td>
<td>329</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.3</td>
<td>Nominal roots</td>
<td>333</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.4</td>
<td>Intensive roots</td>
<td>335</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Uninflected words</td>
<td>338</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.1</td>
<td>Types of uninflected words</td>
<td>339</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.2</td>
<td>The upasarga</td>
<td>341</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.3</td>
<td>Other prefixes</td>
<td>346</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.4</td>
<td><em>ca</em>, <em>vā</em>, and others</td>
<td>349</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.5</td>
<td>Adverbs</td>
<td>353</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Suffixes</td>
<td>354</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.1</td>
<td>The suffix system</td>
<td>355</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.2</td>
<td>-tvā and -ya</td>
<td>358</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.3</td>
<td>-ta and -tavat</td>
<td>363</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.4</td>
<td>-tum</td>
<td>365</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.5</td>
<td>-tavya, -aniya, and -ya</td>
<td>368</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.6</td>
<td>-at, -ana, and -vas</td>
<td>371</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.7</td>
<td>Other root suffixes</td>
<td>375</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.8</td>
<td>Nominal suffixes</td>
<td>379</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>Compounds</td>
<td>383</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.1</td>
<td>The compound system</td>
<td>384</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.2</td>
<td>The dvandva</td>
<td>388</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.3</td>
<td>The tatpurusa</td>
<td>391</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.4</td>
<td>The bahuvrthi</td>
<td>394</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.5</td>
<td>The avayabhāva</td>
<td>397</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Sentences</td>
<td>398</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.1</td>
<td>Sentence structure</td>
<td>399</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
12.2 Agreement ................................................. 402
12.3 Verbless sentences .................................... 407
12.4 Questions .................................................. 409
12.5 Relative phrases ......................................... 414
12.6 Participles .................................................. 418
12.7 The eight cases .......................................... 422
13 Devanagari .................................................. 429
  13.1 How Devanagari works ................................. 430
  13.2 Vowels and consonants ............................... 433
  13.3 Vowel marks ............................................. 436
  13.4 Consonant clusters .................................... 438
  13.5 Numerals and punctuation ............................ 442
  13.6 Old Devanagari ........................................ 444
  13.7 Vedic Devanagari ...................................... 445
14 Other scripts ............................................... 446
  14.1 Romanized Sanskrit .................................... 447
15 Sanskrit software ......................................... 450
  15.1 Why use Sanskrit software? ............................ 451
  15.2 The Harvard-Kyoto system ............................ 452
  15.3 How to type in Sanskrit ............................... 454
  15.4 How to use a Sanskrit-English dictionary ............ 455
16 Lists ......................................................... 457
  16.1 Grammatical Terms .................................... 458
Preface to the print edition

This is the print edition of the Sanskrit for Beginners guide hosted at learnsanskrit.org. We generated this PDF document on 9 October 2022 by processing our website with a special program.

This PDF contains all of the same content that our website does. Although PDFs are less interactive than a standard web page, they are easier to print or to use with e-readers or similar devices. We hope that you find this PDF useful for your needs.

If you have any questions or comments about the material, please reach out to us at learnsanskrit.org/contact.
Introduction
For beginners

Sanskrit is an ancient Indian language that is still spoken and written today, and grammar is the name for a language's rules. Our guide to Sanskrit grammar uses clear and simple language, and it does not expect any special background knowledge. At the same time, our guide is as complete and comprehensive as any textbook on the market today.

Acquiring and studying

First, we want to tell you something very important about language learning:

There are two ways we can develop skill in a language: we can acquire it or we can study it. Acquiring and studying need different methods and produce different results.

Someone who has acquired Sanskrit can understand Sanskrit as quickly and easily as you can understand this sentence. We acquire Sanskrit by engaging with Sanskrit content (such as stories and conversations) that we enjoy and understand.

Someone who has studied Sanskrit can deeply explain how Sanskrit words and sentences work and what rules they follow. We study Sanskrit by learning and practicing grammar rules.

Our guide focuses on studying Sanskrit and not on acquiring it. So if you want to acquire Sanskrit, we strongly recommend that you use the resources below:

- Amarahāsa: free online stories written especially for acquiring Sanskrit.
- Samskrita Bharati (India, US): Conversational Sanskrit. Includes workshops, classes, correspondence courses, and in-person events.
- Vyoma-Saṃskṛta-Pāṭhaśālā: Online Sanskrit lectures in a classroom format.

You can find more resources on our site's Resources page.
What our guide can and cannot do for you

There are countless resources for learning Sanskrit grammar. Why create another? We created our guide because we could not find a resource that was:

- clear and simple
- complete and useful
- easy to search
- delightful to the eye and ear
- freely available

Most importantly, we believe that a guide should do one thing well rather than two things acceptably. Acquiring and studying Sanskrit need radically different approaches, and we do not think they should be mixed in one resource.

Think of our guide as a map of Sanskrit. A map gives you a basic sense of the world around you. A map is useful if you don’t know where you are. But even the best map cannot replace the real world.

Our guide can give you a basic sense of Sanskrit, and it can help you understand the words and sentences you see. But it cannot convey what real Sanskrit is like, because no grammar resource can. At some point, you must engage with real Sanskrit content. And that means acquiring Sanskrit rather than just studying it.

If you have any interest in reading Sanskrit (as opposed to slowly translating it), we urge you to pair our guide with a resource that focuses on acquisition. Just as a map is secondary to the real world, let our guide be secondary to the content you experience.

How our guide is structured

Our guide has a tree structure. Its trunk is a list of core lessons that conveys Sanskrit's core principles, and its branches are the different topics we use to describe Sanskrit's systems in detail. Once you finish our core lessons, you can read the rest of the guide's topics in whatever order you like. You decide what you want to study.
Each lesson in our guide covers one concept or a small set of related concepts. We make each concept clear and concrete by including multiple examples. Finally, we end the lesson with a short review about the lesson's main ideas.

We focus on concepts, not on busywork. This means our guide has:

- no translation exercises
- no vocabulary lists
- no word drills
- no memorization tasks

It may be a shock to you that our guide avoids these devices. Many Sanskrit resources love and rely on them, and we used to love and rely on them too. But ultimately, it is far more effective and far more enjoyable to engage with meaningful content that focuses on acquisition.

Many resources also use complicated technical language to describe Sanskrit. Technical language is sometimes necessary. But as much as possible, we use simple and clear language that ordinary people can understand. And for each concept we discuss, we include plenty of examples to make the discussion clear and concrete.

In case it is useful to you, lessons after the core lessons will also include the standard English and Sanskrit terms for each concept. These terms will help you more easily use other resources outside of our guide.

How to use our guide

It's simple:

1. Read the core lessons and answer all of their review questions. These core lessons are the foundation for the rest of the guide, so it is important to study them well. A tree with a weak trunk will wither and crumble, but a tree with a strong trunk will endure and thrive.

2. Once you understand the core lessons, read any topic you like. Choose any topic you like. When reading a topic, make sure to read its lessons in order. This is because each lesson in a topic builds on the previous ones.
Learning Sanskrit is easier and more fun when you have friends to help you. So please write to us with questions, comments, or anything else you want us to know. We love receiving email, and we will send you a reply as soon as we can.

Since it is important, we will say this again: we strongly recommend that you pair this guide with a resource that focuses on acquisition. If you find a word or phrase that you do not understand, you can always read our guide for help, just as you might read a map when you are lost.

**What to use if you don't like our guide**

No resource is perfect for everybody. If you have decided that our guide is not right for your needs, we have other resources we can recommend. Please also let us know what you wish our guide could offer you.

If you want to acquire Sanskrit, we recommend the resources we mentioned above. Or if you ultimately feel most comfortable with the textbook format, here are the English-language textbooks we recommend for beginners:

- *Introduction to Sanskrit Volumes I and II* by Thomas Egenes. This simple and gentle series explains Sanskrit grammar bit by bit.
- *The Cambridge Introduction to Sanskrit* by Antonia Ruppel. This beautiful work is friendly, methodical, and clear, and it is an excellent follow-up to the Egenes set above.

You can find more resources on our site’s Resources page.

**About the author**

Sanskrit is like a massive and beautiful forest. Many of the people who enter this forest get tangled in a jungle of complicated explanations. And a few unlucky travelers are eaten by the tigers of anxiety, boredom, doubt, and frustration. I created this guide to give ordinary people a clear and enjoyable path through that forest.

I used to believe that grammar was the only way to learn Sanskrit. I now believe that most Sanskrit learners should focus on acquiring Sanskrit rather than study-
ing it. But there will always be people who love and appreciate grammar, just as I do. And there is certainly a need for a resource that explains Sanskrit clearly, simply, and completely.

I dedicate this guide to my grandparents: B. Raghavachari, Mohana Raghavachari, the late S. Rangaswamy, and the late Malathi Rangaswamy. I also dedicate it to you, and to all those who love and learn Sanskrit.

24 September 2021

Copyright

This guide is licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International license. This means that you can use this guide however you like, as long as you credit learnsanskrit.org. But please read the full license for details.
For experts

This longer introduction is meant for advanced readers, such as teachers, scholars, those who may know some Sanskrit already, or those who simply want to know more about the guide. This page covers the same information as our introduction for beginners, but it does so in a deeper and more sophisticated way.

If you are already satisfied by our introduction for beginners, you can skip this section and move on to the next one.

Our intended audience

Our guide is for anyone who wants to read Sanskrit literature and who wants to learn grammar to make sense of what they read. Grammar is a technical subject, but we do not expect any background knowledge in grammar, linguistics, or related fields.

Too often, resources for teaching Sanskrit (especially those written in English) use an academic and highly technical style. This is fine per se, but as a whole, this technical style carries an implicit message: “Sanskrit is something only an elite person can know and learn. If you are not an elite, Sanskrit is not for you.”

We reject this idea completely. We believe that anyone who wants to learn Sanskrit should be able to do so and that it is our responsibility to encourage and nurture learners rather than throw them into a sea of rules and jargon.

Second language acquisition research

Our starting point, and the basis for our approach to Sanskrit grammar, is the main finding from second language acquisition research: acquiring and studying a language are different mental processes and respond to different techniques.

The realm of acquisition is essentially one of subconscious, implicit, and organic growth in the learner's implicit mental representation of the language, which develops through exposure to interesting and level-appropriate content. Consistent exposure to such content over time is enough to acquire any language to a very
high level, perhaps when paired with the limited and ad-hoc study of explicit grammar rules.

The realm of study is essentially one of conscious, explicit, and willful development of an explicit model of the language and its rules, which occurs through the diligent study and application of various rules, often to a list of intentionally memorized words. Consistent study of rules is enough to develop deep mastery but has little relationship to the fast and accurate real-time interpretation of content in our language of interest.

Although the exact relationship between these explicit and implicit modes of engagement is still unclear in the research, what can be said with some confidence is that the neurolinguistic processes involved are different enough to treat implicit (acquisition) and explicit (studying) approaches to language as two different activities.

In the future, we’ll add some links to the literature here. For now, we recommend the works of Bill VanPatten and Susan Gass.

**Focusing on explicit grammar**

In light of this division, we see the textbook model as fundamentally flawed because it attempts to support the divergent activities of implicit and explicit study simultaneously. If implicit knowledge is knowing how to throw a ball, explicit knowledge is knowing the kinematic equations that describe the ball’s trajectory. Knowing the calculus of kinematics has some incidental relationship to throwing a ball, but in a pragmatic sense, neither provides much insight into the other.

Here is a small example of what we mean. A person *rides* a bicycle or skateboard or scooter or motorcycle but *drives* a car or truck and *pilots* a boat or airplane. The semantics of these three words are similar, but it is difficult to articulate a specific and explicit rule that accounts for the difference. Such is the real-world behavior of human language.

Given this divergence between implicit and explicit representations of language and the approaches necessary to cultivate them, we have focused solely on build-
ing up an explicit representation of Sanskrit. This narrower perspective is profoundly liberating and allows us to perform one task simply and effectively.

But perhaps we should address the critical question: why study grammar at all?

Mainly, grammar offers a shortcut to working through ancient Sanskrit literature. We use the phrase “working through” deliberately: the slow, word-by-word analysis of a sentence is completely different from the fast, accurate, and real-time understanding of a sentence that arises through acquisition.

But there are other compelling reasons to pursue the study of grammar. Grammar is interesting for its own sake, especially given Sanskrit's long tradition of linguistics and grammatical study. Grammar can clarify doubts on usage and meaning for those interested in composition or exegesis. And grammar can provide structure for those learners who crave structure and certainty.

What are the specific advantages of focusing solely on explicit representation?

The first is that we can omit many of the devices that are shown in the literature to be ineffective, such as translation drills, conjugation drills, vocabulary lists, and other kinds of what we might call “language practice.” These devices sap time and energy from the student and are not particularly effective for acquisition, which is their intended focus in the first place.

The second is that we can sequence our content in an entirely different way. In the standard textbook, introducing a new topic for discussion is an expensive and costly thing to do, because the assumption is that the student must memorize most or all new material that is presented. But more critically, these topics must be presented with an eye to acquisition. As a result, important but grammatically unusual features are either unreasonably delayed or introduced piecemeal and out of sequence. When we are free of these constraints, we can present Sanskrit's major systems clearly and comprehensively.

If we omit any devices aimed at acquisition, what is our answer to the acquisition problem? What do we recommend that learners do?
Simply, we encourage the use of resources aimed directly at Sanskrit acquisition, such as:

- **Amarahāsa**: free online stories written especially for acquiring Sanskrit.
- **Samskrita Bharati** (India, US): Conversational Sanskrit. Includes workshops, classes, correspondence courses, and in-person events.
- **Vyoma-Samskrta-Pāṭhaśālā**: Online Sanskrit lectures in a classroom format.

That said, there will always be those who find anything other than ancient literature to be a waste of time. Now that our grammar guide has matured, we are building an assisted reading environment for such learners. Assisted reading is not an optimal acquisition environment because the material involved is far too complex for beginning and intermediate learners. But we see such an approach as a pragmatic compromise for those who insist on grammar-based approaches.

**Style and intended audience**

Our focus is ordinary people who want to read Sanskrit literature and who want to use grammar to make sense of what they read. Perhaps some of these people are comfortable with technical expressions like “partitive genitive” or “past passive participle” and delight in the intricacies of grammar. (We can certainly relate!) But to most people, such terms are confusing, intimidating, and sterile. We want to include as many learners as we can, so we avoid this complex and highly technical jargon and prefer simple, everyday language.

This does not mean, however, that we dumb down our content.

As an example, one of the common Sanskrit suffixes is -ta. -ta is often termed a “past passive participle” suffix. This term is problematic in two ways. First, it doesn't make any sense (unless the reader knows about past tenses, the passive voice, and participles). Second, it is a poor fit for Sanskrit specifically:

- Many roots use -ta in an active sense (e.g. gata).
- Many roots use -ta without any clear past sense at all (e.g. śakta).
- The concept of “participles” is much less powerful than just considering the class of Sanskrit verbal suffixes (also known as kṛt suffixes) as a whole.
Rather than laboriously explain this suffix using terms that poorly fit the way Sanskrit works, we can simply say instead that the suffix -\textit{ta} generally shows that someone “has acted” or “has been acted on,” with a few examples. The suffix is thus tied immediately to meaningful Sanskrit expressions and to English counterparts that the reader already knows deeply. And the learner doesn't need to memorize an awkward and ill-fitting term.

To put it simply, we make a distinction between \textit{knowing} Sanskrit and \textit{talking about} Sanskrit. \textit{How} we talk about Sanskrit doesn't matter at all. What matters is that we communicate useful knowledge to the learner in a way that they can easily understand and internalize.
Core lessons
The Sanskrit language

Our core lessons will teach you about all of Sanskrit at a basic level. Together, these core lessons will help you build a strong tree trunk for the rest of your studies.

First, our lessons will focus on the Sanskrit sounds: what they are, how they are pronounced, and how they affect each other. We will then learn some of the sound change rules that Sanskrit often uses. Here is a simple example of a sound change rule:

कृ ष्णः न युध्यते → कृ ष्णो न युध्यते

krṣṇaḥ na yudhyate → krṣṇo na yudhyate

Krishna does not fight.

(Don’t worry about the details here; we will explain them later.)

Once we finish learning about Sanskrit's sounds and sound change rules, we will learn about basic Sanskrit sentences. We will also learn about the three basic word types that Sanskrit uses. First, we will learn about naming words like “Krishna”:

कृ ष्णो न युध्यते।

krṣṇo na yudhyate.

Krishna does not fight.

Next, we will learn about action words like “fight”:

कृ ष्णो न युध्यते।

krṣṇo na yudhyate.

Krishna does not fight.

Finally, we will learn about miscellaneous words like “not”:

कृ ष्णो न युध्यते।

krṣṇo na yudhyate.

Krishna does not fight.
We will end our core lessons by learning how to create new words in Sanskrit. Here are some examples of the kinds of words we can create:

युञ्ज् + अ → योग

$yuj + a \rightarrow yoga$
yoke, join, unite → yoking, junction, union; yoga

योग + इन् → योगिन्

$yoga + in \rightarrow yogin$
yoga → characterized by yoga; yogi

कर्मन् + योग → कर्मयोग

$karman + yoga \rightarrow karmayoga$
$karma$ (action) + yoga → yoga of action; karma yoga

Together, these core lessons will give us a complete view of Sanskrit grammar. Once you finish these core lessons and know them well, you can explore the rest of our guide in whatever order you like.
Basic vowels

Sanskrit students traditionally begin their studies by learning about the different Sanskrit sounds. We will start our core lessons in the same way.

Why is it so important to study Sanskrit's sounds? It is because Sanskrit sounds often transform due to sound change rules. If we study Sanskrit's sounds closely, then we can better use and understand these sound change rules.

For that reason, half of our core lessons are about sounds: how to pronounce them, what they are like, and how they affect each other.

First, a note on scripts

A script is a way of writing down a language's sounds. In modern times, most people write Sanskrit in the Devanagari (देवनागरी) script. In the West, many people also use romanized Sanskrit, which uses an extended version of the Latin alphabet.

Most of the Sanskrit in our guide is written in both Devanagari and in romanized Sanskrit. You can use a different script by accessing our online guide at learnsanskrit.org/guide.

If you don't know Devanagari and want to learn it, see the Devanagari topic in our guide. But before you do, we recommend that you finish the core lessons.

How do we make different sounds?

When we speak, a stream of air flows out of our lungs and through our mouth and nose. If we move our tongue, our lips, and other parts of our mouth, we can modify this flow of air and create different sounds.

Simple and open sounds like “a” and “o” are called vowels. When we pronounce them, our breath flows straight out of our mouths. And by moving our tongue and lips, we can create different vowel sounds: “Aaa! Eee! Ooo!”
The first Sanskrit vowel is a. a is a simple and relaxed sound:

अ

a

We’re still adding audio to the new version of our guide. For now, you can listen to all of these sounds through this resource from the University of British Columbia.

Points of pronunciation

If we change the position of our tongue and lips, we can modify the basic vowel a and create other vowels.

How might we modify this sound? One way is by changing the point of pronunciation we use. Sanskrit sounds use five basic points of pronunciation, and you can see all five of them marked in the image below:

From right to left, these points are:

• the soft palate, which is the soft and fleshy area at the back of your mouth
• the hard palate, which is the hard and bony area that is sometimes called the “roof” of our mouth
• the edge of the roof of the mouth, near the “hard bump” near our teeth
• the base of our teeth
• the lips

When we pronounce a, our tongue rests near our soft palate:

अ
a

But if we change where our tongue rests in our mouth, we can create different vowel sounds. For example, we can move the middle of our tongue closer to the hard palate:

इ
i

Or the tip of our tongue might rest near the bump on the roof of our mouth:

ऋ
ṛ

Or the tip might rest near the base of the teeth:

ऌ
ḷ

Or we might use our lips instead:

उ
u
By using these five points of pronunciation, we create five different vowel sounds. And by changing our pronunciation in other ways, we can create many other kinds of sounds.

In Sanskrit's early history, people pronounced the sounds ṛ and ḷ in a simple way. Today, people in different regions pronounce them in different styles. So, you might hear many different pronunciations for these vowels.

**Review**

In the next lesson, we'll combine the basic vowels above and create a variety of different sounds.

1. What are the five points of pronunciation?
2. What are the five vowels that we learned about in this lesson?
Short and long vowels

In the previous lesson, we learned about five basic vowels:

अ  इ  ऋ  ळ  उ  

a  i  ṭr  ṭl  u

These five vowels are like different ingredients in a kitchen. By combining ingredients in different ways, we can create all kinds of new flavors. And by combining vowels in different ways, we can create all kinds of new sounds.

In this lesson, we will learn about some of the new sounds we can create by combining the basic vowels above.

Doubling a vowel

Suppose we are drinking tea and want to make our tea sweeter. What is the difference between adding one spoon of sugar and adding two? With one spoonful, our tea will be sweet. With two spoonfuls, our tea will be very sweet!

In the same way, what if we combine a and a together? We get a new sound that has the same basic flavor as a but in a more intense form. We get the vowel ā:

आ  

ā

ā is pronounced for twice as much time as a. For this reason, ā is called a long vowel, and a is called a short vowel.

We will study many different sound combinations in our guide. So let's use this simple format to describe them:

अ + अ → आ  

a + a → ā
To the left of the arrow, you can see the two sounds that we combine (a and a). To the right, you can see our result (ā). You can read this rule as “a and a combine to make ā.”

Can we combine the other vowels we’ve seen so far? Yes, we can:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{i} + \text{i} & \rightarrow \text{i} \\
\text{ṛ} + \text{ṛ} & \rightarrow \text{ṝ}
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{उ} + \text{उ} & \rightarrow \text{ऊ}
\end{align*}
\]

\(l\) is very rare in Sanskrit, and it does not have a long version. So in total, these combinations give us four new long vowels:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{आ} & \rightarrow \text{ā} \\
\text{ई} & \rightarrow \text{i} \\
\text{ॠ} & \rightarrow \text{ṝ} \\
\text{ऊ} & \rightarrow \text{ū}
\end{align*}
\]

**Combining long vowels**

What happens if we try the combinations below? Do we get an “extra long” ā?

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{अ} + \text{अ} & \rightarrow \text{आ} \\
\text{a} + \text{a} & \rightarrow \text{ā}
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{अ} + \text{आ} & \rightarrow ? \\
\text{a} + \text{ā} & \rightarrow ?
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{आ} + \text{अ} & \rightarrow ? \\
\text{ā} + \text{a} & \rightarrow ?
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{आ} + \text{आ} & \rightarrow ? \\
\text{ā} + \text{ā} & \rightarrow ?
\end{align*}
\]
No, we don't get an “extra long” ā. All of these combinations give us ā again:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{अ + अ} & \rightarrow \text{आ} \\
a + a & \rightarrow \ddot{a} \\
\text{अ + आ} & \rightarrow \text{आ} \\
a + \ddot{a} & \rightarrow \ddot{a} \\
\text{आ + अ} & \rightarrow \text{आ} \\
\ddot{a} + a & \rightarrow \ddot{a} \\
\text{आ + आ} & \rightarrow \text{आ} \\
\ddot{a} + \ddot{a} & \rightarrow \ddot{a}
\end{align*}
\]

To save space and make the pattern clear, let's write down all four of these changes like so:

\[
\begin{align*}
(a, \ddot{a}) + (a, \ddot{a}) & \rightarrow \ddot{a}
\end{align*}
\]

Here, \((a, \ddot{a})\) means “a or \(\ddot{a}\).” So you can read this rule as “a or \(\ddot{a}\) combines with another a or \(\ddot{a}\) to create \(\ddot{a}\).”

Likewise, here are the rules for the other vowels:

\[
\begin{align*}
(i, \dot{i}) + (i, \dot{i}) & \rightarrow \dot{i} \\
(r, \dot{r}) + (r, \dot{r}) & \rightarrow \dot{r} \\
(u, \dot{u}) + (u, \dot{u}) & \rightarrow \ddot{u}
\end{align*}
\]

**Review**

We have now seen the first nine Sanskrit vowels. Here they are in their traditional order:
In the next lesson, we will continue to combine these vowels in different ways and create new sounds. Now, here are a few review questions:

1. Which vowels are short? Which vowels are long?
2. What do we get when we combine ā and ā?
3. What do we get when we combine i and i?
Semivowels

Just as we can combine sugar and salt to make new flavors, we can combine vowels that use different points of pronunciation to make new sounds.

If the first vowel is not a or ā, then it becomes a special shortened form. For example, i or ĭ might change like this:

\[
\begin{align*}
(इ, ई) + अ & \rightarrow य \\
(i, ĭ) + a & \rightarrow ya \\
(इ, ई) + आ & \rightarrow या \\
(i, ĭ) + ā & \rightarrow yā
\end{align*}
\]

And likewise for yu, yū, yṛ, yṝ, and yḷ. We can make similar combinations with the other vowels:

\[
\begin{align*}
(इ, ई) + अ & \rightarrow य \\
(i, ĭ) + a & \rightarrow ya \\
(ऋ, ॠ) + अ & \rightarrow र \\
(ṛ, ṝ) + a & \rightarrow ra \\
ल + अ & \rightarrow la \\
(उ, ū) + a & \rightarrow va
\end{align*}
\]

And likewise if the second vowel is not a.

Together, these combinations give us four new sounds:

\begin{align*}
\text{य} & \quad \text{र} & \quad \text{ल} & \quad \text{व} \\
yā & \quad ra & \quad la & \quad va
\end{align*}
Why do we add \(a\) to all of these sounds? We add \(a\) so that we can pronounce these sounds more easily. At the same time, adding \(a\) lets us create convenient names for these sounds. For example, we can talk about the sound \(ya\), the sound \(ra\), and so on.

These new sounds are similar to vowels, but they behave a little differently from the vowels we've seen. So, they are called **semivowels**. Each semivowel uses a different point of pronunciation:

- \(ya\) is pronounced at the same point as \(i\) and \(ī\).
- \(ra\) is pronounced at the same point as \(ṛ\) and \(ṝ\).
- \(la\) is pronounced at the same point as \(ḷ\).
- \(va\) is pronounced at the same point as \(u\) and \(ū\).

Semivowels are a part of a larger group of sounds called **consonants**. We will learn more about consonants in a future lesson.

**Review**

In the next lesson, we will complete our study of the Sanskrit vowels. For review, see if you can combine the sounds below correctly:

- \(ई + उ \rightarrow ?\)
- \(ī + u \rightarrow ?\)
- \(ॠ + ई \rightarrow ?\)
- \(ṝ + ī \rightarrow ?\)
- \(ऌ + ए \rightarrow ?\)
- \(ḷ + e \rightarrow ?\)
- \(उ + आ \rightarrow ?\)
- \(u + ā \rightarrow ?\)
Compound vowels

In the previous lesson, we learned how vowels combine if the first vowel is not a or ā. In those situations, the first vowel becomes a semivowel:

\[
\text{इ} + \text{अ} \rightarrow \text{य} \\
i + a \rightarrow ya
\]

But what does happen if the first vowel is a or ā?

\[
(अ, आ) + \text{इ} \rightarrow ? \\
(a, ā) + i \rightarrow ?
\]

In this lesson, we will learn what happens and complete our basic picture of the Sanskrit vowels.

**e and o**

a and ā combine well with other vowels. So when a or ā is the first vowel, we get these new combinations:

\[
(अ, आ) + (इ, ई) \rightarrow ए \\
(a, ā) + (i, ī) \rightarrow e
\]

\[
(अ, आ) + (उ, ऊ) \rightarrow ओ \\
(a, ā) + (u, ū) \rightarrow o
\]

\[
(अ, आ) + (ऋ, ॠ) \rightarrow अर् \\
(a, ā) + (ṛ, ṝ) \rightarrow ar
\]

\[
(अ, आ) + ऽ \rightarrow अल् \\
(a, ā) + l \rightarrow al
\]

r and l are semivowels, and we have seen them already. But e and o are new sounds:
e and o are called **compound vowels**, since they are compounds of two different vowel sounds. Compound vowels are always *long* vowels. All of the other vowels we've seen are called **simple vowels**, and these simple vowels can be either short (like a) or long (like ā).

**ai and au**

Can we combine a with these new sounds again? Yes, we can:

\[
(अ, आ) + ए \rightarrow ऐ
\]
\[
(a, ā) + e \rightarrow ai
\]

\[
(अ, आ) + ओ \rightarrow औ
g(अ, आ) + o \rightarrow au
\]

\[
(अ, आ) + अ ज् \rightarrow आ ज्
g(a, ā) + ar \rightarrow ār
\]

\[
(अ, आ) + अल ज् \rightarrow आल ज्
g(a, ā) + al \rightarrow āl
\]

ai and au are also compound vowels, and they are also long:

\[
ऐ
e
\]
\[
ai
\]
\[
औ
o
\]
\[
u
au
\]

Can we combine a with these sounds once more? We can, but the result is the same. There are no more sounds we can create:

\[
(अ, आ) + ऐ \rightarrow ऐ
\]
\[
(a, ā) + ai \rightarrow ai
\]
Combining compound vowels

We have seen almost all of the different ways that Sanskrit vowels combine with each other. But there is one loose end. What if the first vowel is a compound vowel?

If the first vowel is a compound vowel, then we usually see the following changes:

ए + अ → अ ज् अ
$e + a \rightarrow ay a$

ऐ + अ → आ ज् अ
$ai + a \rightarrow āy a$

ओ + अ → अव ज् अ
$o + a \rightarrow av a$

औ + अ → आव ज् अ
$au + a \rightarrow āv a$

And likewise if the second vowel is not $a$.

If these changes feel strange to you, it might help to remember where the compound vowels come from. For example, the compound vowel $e$ comes from the vowels $a$ and $i$. So when $e$ is followed by some other vowel, it's as if the $i$ sound becomes the semivowel $y$:

ए + अ → अ + इ + अ
$e + a \rightarrow a + i + a$
अ + इ + अ → अय् अ
$a + i + a \rightarrow ay a$

We can think about $ai$ in the same way:

ऐ + अ → अ + अ + इ + अ
$ai + a \rightarrow a + a + i + a$

अ + अ + इ + अ → आय् अ
$a + a + i + a \rightarrow āy a$

But if thinking about the vowels this way is too confusing, you can just memorize the four changes above. We repeat them here for convenience:

ऐ + अ → अय् अ
e + a → ay a

ऐ + अ → आय् अ
$ai + a \rightarrow āy a$

ओ + अ → अव् अ
$o + a \rightarrow av a$

औ + अ → आव् अ
$au + a \rightarrow āv a$

Review

We have now seen all of the fundamental Sanskrit vowels. Here they are in their traditional order:
In the next lesson, we will learn about consonants. But before that, here are a few review questions:

1. Which vowels are short? Which vowels are long?
2. Which vowels are compound vowels?
3. What do we get when we combine \( o \) and \( i \)?
4. What do we get when we combine \( au \) and \( e \)?
Consonants

In the previous lessons, we learned about the Sanskrit vowels and how they combine with each other. In this lesson, we will learn about a new type of sound: the **consonant**. For example, the semivowels we saw in the previous lesson (ya, ra, la, va) are all consonants.

We create consonants by disturbing the clean flow of air through the mouth. If we use the different points of pronunciation and touch them in different ways, we can create many new consonant sounds.

**The first 25 consonants**

When we make sounds like “k” and “p,” the flow of air through our mouths stops completely. We pronounce the first 25 Sanskrit consonants by *stopping* the flow of air through the mouth.

For example, we can create the sound *k* by touching the base of the tongue to the soft palate. We call this sound *ka*, because *ka* is easier to pronounce than just *k*:

\[ \text{k} \]

*ka*

*ka* is pronounced when the flow of air continues in a gentle way. If it continues in a forceful way with extra air, we create a new sound *kha*:

\[ \text{kha} \]

*kha*

*kha* is called an **aspirated** sound, and *ka* is called an **unaspirated** sound. (The word “aspirated” just means “with extra breath,” and it is related to words like “respire” and “inspire.”). When we change how we use our breath, we change the basic sound *ka* to create something new.
But we can make other changes besides just changing our breathing. If you touch your fingers to your throat and pronounce the sounds “sss” and “zzz,” you can feel your throat and vocal cords vibrate. This vibration is called **voicing**.

Sounds like “s” don’t use voicing, so they are called **unvoiced** sounds. Meanwhile, sounds like “z” do use voicing, so they are likewise called **voiced** sounds. All of the vowels we have seen are also voiced sounds. And just as we have the unvoiced consonants ka and kha, we have the voiced consonants ga and gha:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{ग} & \quad \text{घ} \\
\text{ga} & \quad \text{gha}
\end{align*}
\]

We can also make sounds by redirecting the flow of air. If we redirect this flow of air through our nose, we create the sound ṇa. Since we pronounce ṇa with the help of the nose, it is called a **nasal** consonant:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{ङ} & \\
\text{ṅa}
\end{align*}
\]

So from just the soft palate, we get five new consonant sounds:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{क} & \quad \text{ख} & \quad \text{ग} & \quad \text{घ} & \quad \text{ङ} \\
ka & \quad kha & \quad ga & \quad gha & \quad ṇa
\end{align*}
\]

Now, what happens if we use the hard palate instead of the soft palate? We get five more consonants:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{च} & \quad \text{छ} & \quad \text{ज} & \quad \text{झ} & \quad \text{ञ} \\
ca & \quad cha & \quad ja & \quad jha & \quad ṇa
\end{align*}
\]
What if the tip of the tongue touches the hard bump on the roof of the mouth?
Then we get five more consonants:

\[\text{ट} \quad \text{ठ} \quad \text{ड} \quad \text{ढ} \quad \text{ण} \]
\[\text{ṭ} \quad \text{ṭha} \quad \text{ḍa} \quad \text{ḍha} \quad \text{ṇa} \]

And likewise when the tip of the tongue touches the base of the teeth:

\[\text{त} \quad \text{थ} \quad \text{द} \quad \text{ध} \quad \text{न} \]
\[\text{ta} \quad \text{tha} \quad \text{da} \quad \text{dha} \quad \text{na} \]

Or when the lips touch:

\[\text{प} \quad \text{फ} \quad \text{ब} \quad \text{भ} \quad \text{म} \]
\[\text{pa} \quad \text{pha} \quad \text{ba} \quad \text{bha} \quad \text{ma} \]

By using the five points of pronunciation, we have created 25 different consonant sounds. Let's consider all 25 of these sounds together:
These sounds form a grid with five rows and five columns. The sounds in each row use the same point of pronunciation. And the sounds in each column have similar properties:

- All the sounds in the first two columns (the *ka* and *kha* columns) are unvoiced, and the others are voiced.
- All of the sounds in the second and fourth columns (the *kha* and *gha* columns) are aspirated, and the others are unaspirated.
- All of the sounds in the fifth column (*ṇa ṇa ṇa na ma*) are nasal consonants.

This simple scheme, which is almost 3000 years old, lets us quickly understand how the different consonant sounds relate to each other.
The other consonants

We have just a few more consonants to examine.

Instead of stopping the flow of air, we can just *constrict* it. If we do so, we get the semivowels, which we saw in a previous lesson:

\[
\begin{align*}
y & \quad r & \quad l & \quad v \\
 ya & \quad ra & \quad la & \quad va
\end{align*}
\]

*ra* has a rougher sound similar to what you might hear in Hindi or Spanish. And *va* is pronounced like a mix of the English “v” and “w” sounds.

We can also disturb the flow of air to make a *hissing* sound. If we do so, we can make three new sounds: *śa* at the hard palate, *ṣa* at the roof, and *sa* at the teeth. All three of these sounds are unvoiced:

\[
\begin{align*}
 ś & \quad ṣ & \quad s \\
 śa & \quad ṣa & \quad sa
\end{align*}
\]

And finally, we can make a *voiced* hissing sound by using the soft palate:

\[
\begin{align*}
 h \\
 ha
\end{align*}
\]

We have now seen all of the standard Sanskrit consonants. Here they are in their traditional order:
In Devanagari, consecutive consonants are written in an unusual way. For details, see our [lesson on consonant clusters](#).
Review

We have seen almost all of the sounds used in normal Sanskrit. In the next lesson, we’ll study two more sounds and complete our study of the Sanskrit alphabet.

1. What point of pronunciation does ja use? What about da?
2. Which consonants are nasal sounds?
3. Is ya a vowel or a consonant?
4. Is śa voiced or unvoiced? What about ha?
anuvāra and visarga

In this lesson, we will learn about the last two sounds in the Sanskrit alphabet. These sounds often change when other sounds follow them. But with what we have learned so far, we can easily understand these sounds and their changes.

anuvāra

The first sound we will study is called the anuvāra (“after-sound”):

अं

aṃ

(We've added a before the anuvāra to make it easier to pronounce.)

The anuvāra has its own distinct pronunciation. But often, its written form is used as a kind of “shorthand” for nasal sounds followed by a consonant. In each example below, we should pronounce the word on the left in the same way as the word on the right:

सांग: → सञ्जः:

samghaḥ → saṅghaḥ

सांजय: → सञ्जयः:

samjayah → sañjayah

सांन्यासः → सञ्ज्ञासः:

saṃnyāsaḥ → sannyāsaḥ

सांबन्ध: → सांबन्धः:

saṃbandhaḥ → sambandhaḥ

If you would like to read more about the anuvāra, we recommend this short monograph by Shriramana Sharma.
visarga

The next sound is called the visarga (“release”):

अः

aḥ

(As with the anusvāra, we’ve added a before the visarga to make it easier to pronounce.)

Generally, the visarga is pronounced like the “h” in “house.” It is pronounced at the soft palate.

In modern times, however, the visarga is often pronounced like an “echo” of the previous vowel when it is at the end of a phrase. So aḥ is pronounced like aha, ūḥ is pronounced like ūhu, aih is pronounced like aihi, and so on.

The Sanskrit alphabet

Here is the standard Sanskrit alphabet in order. First are the simple vowels:

अ आ इ ई उ ऊ र ṛ ṭ ḷ

a ā i ī u ū r ṭ ḷ

Then the compound vowels:

ए ऐ ओ औ
e ai o au

Then the anusvāra and visarga:
Then the consonants:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>क</th>
<th>ख</th>
<th>ग</th>
<th>घ</th>
<th>ङ</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ka</td>
<td>kha</td>
<td>ga</td>
<td>gha</td>
<td>ña</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>च</td>
<td>छ</td>
<td>ज</td>
<td>झ</td>
<td>ञ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ca</td>
<td>cha</td>
<td>ja</td>
<td>jha</td>
<td>ña</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ट</td>
<td>ठ</td>
<td>ड</td>
<td>ढ</td>
<td>ण</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ṭa</td>
<td>ṭha</td>
<td>ḍa</td>
<td>ḍha</td>
<td>ña</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>त</td>
<td>थ</td>
<td>द</td>
<td>ध</td>
<td>न</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ta</td>
<td>tha</td>
<td>da</td>
<td>dha</td>
<td>na</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>प</td>
<td>फ</td>
<td>ब</td>
<td>भ</td>
<td>म</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pa</td>
<td>pha</td>
<td>ba</td>
<td>bha</td>
<td>ma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>य</td>
<td>र</td>
<td>ल</td>
<td>व</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ya</td>
<td>ra</td>
<td>la</td>
<td>va</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>श</td>
<td>ष</td>
<td>स</td>
<td>ह</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>śa</td>
<td>ṣa</td>
<td>sa</td>
<td>ha</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In the list above, we have colored each letter according to the point of pronunciation it uses. Letters that use two points of pronunciation are left black. The
anusvāra is also left black, since it doesn’t use any of these points of pronunciation.

Technically, va uses two points of pronunciation, since it uses the upper teeth and the lower lip. But for conceptual clarity, we have colored it like pa and the others.

**Review**

Now we have seen all of the sounds used in normal Sanskrit. Our kitchen of sounds is well-stocked and ready for use.

1. What is the sound aḥ called? What is the sound aṃ called?
2. In modern times, how is auḥ often pronounced at the end of a sentence?
3. How is saṃcaya usually pronounced? How about saṃbodhi?
Syllables

Syllables are groups of sounds that we pronounce as one unit. For example, a word like “beginners” has three syllables (“be-gin-ners”). Now that we know about the basic Sanskrit sounds, let's learn more about syllables.

Why learn about syllables? First, knowing about syllables helps us have good pronunciation. Second, some of Sanskrit’s rules are easier to understand if we know how syllables work.

How to split a phrase into syllables

In Sanskrit, each syllable has exactly one vowel:

योग → यो ग
yoga → yo ga
yoga

व्याकरण → व्या कर ण
vyākaraṇa → vyā ka ra ṇa
grammar

Traditionally, each syllable should end in a vowel:

धर्म → धर्म
dharma → dha rma
dharma

क्षेत्र → क्षे त्र
kṣetra → kše tra
field

And the anusvāra and visarga are in the same syllable as the vowel they follow:

संस्कृत → सं स्कृ त
saṃskṛta → saṃ skṛ ta
Sanskrit
duḥkha → duḥ kha  
difficulty, suffering

If there are any other sounds at the end of our phrase, we include them in the last syllable:

sukham → su kham  
ease, pleasure

vṛkṣāt → vr kṣāt  
from the tree

To better understand these rules, let’s read the first verse of the Bhagavad Gita, which you can listen to here. Here is the first half of the verse:

dharmakṣetre kurukṣetre samavetā yuyutsaḥ ।

We split this into syllables like so:

dharmakṣetre kurukṣetre → dha rma kṣe tre ku ru kṣe tre

samavetā yuyutsaḥ → sa ma ve tā yu yu tsa vah

**Devanagari: a syllable script**

In the examples above, notice how cleanly each Devanagari word separates into different syllables. Each “unit” of Devanagari is its own syllable according to the rules above.
Light and heavy syllables

There are two kinds of syllables: light and heavy. We usually pronounce heavy syllables for twice as much time as light syllables.

Which syllables are light, and which are heavy? Generally, these syllables are heavy:

- Syllables with long vowels.
- Syllables that are followed by multiple consonants.
- Syllables that are followed by the anusvāra or visarga.

And all other syllables are light.

In the example below, the red syllables are heavy and the black ones are light. As you read through this example, try to explain why each syllable is light or heavy:

ध र्म ते त्रते

$dha rma kṣe tre$

यु रु ते

$ku ru kṣe tre$

स वते

$sa ma ve tā$

यु यु

$yu yu$

त्स

$tsa$

वः

$vaḥ$

Review

If you pronounce light and heavy syllables correctly, your Sanskrit pronunciation will be sharp and clear.

If you would like to practice identifying syllables, you can try dividing the lines below. The first line is from the Puruṣasūktam, which you can listen to here:

सहस्रशीर्षा पुरुष: सहस्राक्ष: सहस्रपात्

$sahasraśīrṣā puruṣaḥ sahasrākṣaḥ sahasrapāt$

The next line is from the Venkaṭasuprabhātam, which you can listen to here:

मात: समस्तजगतां मधुकैटभारे:

$mātaḥ samastajagatāṁ madhukaiṭabhāreḥ$
And the last line is from the *Mahiṣāsuramardinistotram*, which you can listen to here:

अ गिरिन्द्रिणि नन्दितमेदिनि विश्वविनोदिनि नन्दिनुते

ayi girinandini nanditamedini viśvavinodini nandinute
Sandhi

When we speak quickly, we make many kinds of small and subconscious changes to the way we speak. These small changes let us speak more quickly and smoothly. For example, some native English speakers will not pronounce the final “g” sound of words like “walking” and “going.”

These kinds of sound changes also occur in Sanskrit. Here is a simple example:

सीता अश्वम इच्छति → सीताश्वम इच्छति
sītā aśvam icchati → sītāśvam icchati
Sita wants a horse.

When we speak quickly, it is difficult to pause after the ā in sītā and start again with the first a of aśvam. By combining these two vowels into a single sound, our speech remains fast and smooth.

In Sanskrit, these sound changes are called sandhi, which means “joining” or “junction.” Sandhi refers to what happens at the junction of different sounds.

Every language has its own sandhi changes. But Sanskrit sandhi is unusual because it is often written down. For example, the Sanskrit words gajo and gajas have exactly the same meaning, but we use gajo in front of some sounds and gajas in front of others:

गजो नगरं गच्छति।
*gajo* nagaram gacchati.
The elephant goes to the village.

गजस तरुं गच्छति।
*gajas* tarum gacchati.
The elephant goes to the tree.

Why are sandhi changes written down in Sanskrit? Sanskrit speakers cared about the power of spoken language. Writing, when it was used at all, was meant to preserve the sound of spoken Sanskrit. So since sandhi changes appear in spoken Sanskrit, they usually appear in written Sanskrit too.
In this lesson, we'll learn a few basic sandhi rules. Studying these rules will also help us build up our awareness of different Sanskrit sounds.

**The basic principle of sandhi**

This is the basic principle of sandhi:

> Generally, sandhi makes it easier to speak quickly and smoothly.

If you remember this basic principle, you can save yourself hours of time. In fact, this principle is so important that we will say it twice:

> Generally, sandhi makes it easier to speak quickly and smoothly.

We urge you to read the examples below *out loud*. Read them slowly, and read them quickly. Notice which sounds are easy to say and which are difficult. Over time, your mind and body will develop an intuition for how sandhi changes should feel.

**Vowel sandhi**

Vowel sandhi is the name for sandhi rules between two vowels.

Actually, we have studied most of vowel sandhi already. When we studied the different vowel combinations, what we were really studying were vowel sandhi rules. As a reminder, here are some examples of vowel sandhi:

\[ \text{सीता अश्वम् इच्छति} \rightarrow \text{सीताश्वम् इच्छति} \]

\[ sītā aśvam icchati \rightarrow sītāśvam icchati \]

Sita wants a horse.

\[ \text{सीता इषुम् इच्छति} \rightarrow \text{सीतेषुम् इच्छति} \]

\[ sītā iṣum icchati \rightarrow sīteṣum icchati \]

Sita wants an arrow.
Sītā wants this.

Sītā wants water.

Sītā wants rice.

And a few more with a different first vowel:

Shabari wants a horse.

Shabari wants an arrow.

Shabari wants rice.

**visarga sandhi**

*visarga sandhi* is the name for sandhi changes where the first sound is the *visarga*. For now, we will give some basic examples of *visarga* sandhi.

One common change is that the *visarga* becomes śa if followed by the letters ca or cha:

The elephants walk.
and sa if followed by the letters ta or tha:

\[ \text{गनाश्च तिष्ठन्ति} \rightarrow \text{गजास्तिष्ठन्ति}. \]
\[ gajāḥ tiṣṭhanti \rightarrow gajās tiṣṭhanti. \]
The elephants stand.

The idea is that the visarga, which is pronounced at the soft palate, changes to match the point of pronunciation used by ca, cha, ta, and tha. When these sounds match, we can pronounce them together more easily.

Another change is that the visarga disappears if a voiced sound follows it:

\[ \text{गनाश्चगच्छन्ति} \rightarrow \text{गजागच्छन्ति}. \]
\[ gajāḥ gacchanti. \rightarrow gajā gacchanti. \]
The elephants go.

\[ \text{गनाश्चनन्ति} \rightarrow \text{गजानन्ति}. \]
\[ gajāḥ nadanti. \rightarrow gajā nadanti. \]
The elephants roar.

\[ \text{गनाश्चआम्रन् पश्यन्ति} \rightarrow \text{गजाआम्रपश्यन्ति}. \]
\[ gajāḥ āmram paśyanti. \rightarrow gajā āmram paśyanti. \]
The elephants see a mango tree.

Just as a drop of water vanishes when it touches a hot pan, the unvoiced visarga vanishes when it touches a voiced sound. But one important exception is that aḥ becomes o if a voiced consonant follows:

\[ \text{रामो युध्यते} \rightarrow \text{रामो युध्यते}. \]
\[ rāmo yudhyate \rightarrow rāmo yudhyate \]
Rama fights.

\[ \text{रामो जयति} \rightarrow \text{रामो जयति}. \]
\[ rāmo jayati \rightarrow rāmo jayati \]
Rama conquers.
Consonant sandhi

Consonant sandhi is the name for sandhi rules where the first sound is a consonant. Here we will give one small example of consonant sandhi. When the sound *m* is followed by a consonant, it becomes the *anusvāra*:

Rama goes to the ocean.

Rama goes to the forest.

Rama goes to the moon.

Remember: the *anusvāra* is often used as a shorthand way to write down different nasal sounds. For example, the two sentences below are written differently, but they are often pronounced identically:

If we keep this in mind, then we have the same principle as before: *m* changes to match the point of pronunciation used by the following sound. When both
sounds use the same point of pronunciation, we can pronounce them together more easily.

**The avagraha**

Finally, you may sometimes see this symbol when you read Sanskrit:

![Avagraha symbol]

This symbol is called the *avagraha*, and it is not pronounced.

The *avagraha* is similar to the *apostrophe* (’) symbol that we use in English. In English, one of the ways we use the apostrophe is to show that a sound was removed. For example, the contraction “isn’t” comes from “is not.” Here, the apostrophe in “isn’t” shows that the “o” in “not” was removed.

In the same way, we use the *avagraha* in Sanskrit to show that a vowel (usually *a*) was removed due to sandhi. Here is a common change that uses the *avagraha*:

\[
\text{राम: अयोध्याम् गच्छति} \rightarrow \text{रामो योध्याम् गच्छति।}
\]

*rāmaḥ ayodhyāṁ gacchati* → *rāmo ‘yodhyāṁ gacchati.*

Rama goes to Ayodhya.

The rule here is that if the *visarga* has an *a* on either side of it, all three sounds are replaced with *o*. Again, there is a complicated explanation for this change, but it is easier to just memorize it.

Different authors have their own preferences on whether to use the *avagraha* or not. So although it is useful, do not assume it will always be used.
Review

Most sandhi changes follow simple principles that are easy to understand. When in doubt, speak out loud. And if you want to learn much more about sandhi, see our *Sandhi* topic after you finish the core lessons.

1. Earlier in this lesson, we wrote that most sandhi rules follow a basic principle that can save you a lot of time. What is that basic principle?
2. How does the phrase *kausalyā icchati* change due to sandhi?
3. How does the phrase *arjunāḥ tiṣṭhati* change due to sandhi?
4. How does the phrase *arjunāḥ gacchati* change due to sandhi?
5. How does the phrase *arjunāḥ vanam gacchati* change due to sandhi?
Sentences

So far, we have focused on the smallest parts of Sanskrit: its sounds. But rather than count every grain of rice, let's simply savor the meal in front of us. In this lesson, let's consider Sanskrit from a broader point of view and discuss some simple sentences.

Word order

Here is a simple Sanskrit sentence:

रामः सीताम पश्यति।

rāmaḥ sītām paśyati.

Rama sees Sita.

Rama and Sita are two of the main characters in the Ramayana, one of the ancient Sanskrit poems. For much of the Ramayana, Rama and Sita are far apart, and Rama searches desperately to find her. So it is a happy thing that Rama can see Sita at last.

Notice the word order in this sentence. The main action of the sentence is that one person is seeing another. The person who performs the action (rāmaḥ) is called the subject. The person who is affected by the action (sītām) is called the object. And the word that describes the action (paśyati) is called the verb.

In English, the usual order of these three is subject, then verb, then object. So English is sometimes called a “subject-verb-object” (SVO) language. But Sanskrit does not work this way. Like many Indian languages, it tends to use a “subject-object-verb” (SOV) order.

Word endings

Rama sees Sita, but perhaps Sita wants to see Rama too. So let's add another sentence:

रामः सीतां पद्यति।

rāmaḥ sītāṁ paśyati.

Rama sees Sita.
सीता राम पद्यति।
$sītā rāmaṃ paśyati$.
Sita sees Rama.

Here we notice something else. When Rama is the person seeing, we use the word $rāmaḥ$. But when Rama is the person being seen, we use the word $rāmam$. ($rāmam$ becomes $rāmaṃ$ due to sandhi.)

All languages express meaning in their own ways. In Sanskrit, one of the important ways we express different meanings is by changing a word. And usually, we change a word by changing its ending.

Different word endings can show whether someone is the subject of a sentence ($rāmaḥ$), the object of a sentence ($rāmam$), or even something else entirely:

सीता रामाय पद्यति।
$sītā rāmāya paśyati$.
Sita sees for Rama.

सीता रामेन सह नगरं पद्यति।
$sītā rāmeṇa saha nagaraṃ paśyati$.
Sita sees the city with Rama.

सीता रामस्य पितरं पद्यति।
$sītā rāmasya pitaram paśyati$.
Sita sees Rama’s father.

English uses different word endings in a limited way. We see one $bird$ but two $birds$; I $run$ in a field but someone $runs$ in a park. But Sanskrit words use many different kinds of word endings. Some endings are very simple, like the ones above. But other endings are more complex:

सीता राम पद्यति।
$sītā rāmaṃ paśyati$.
Sita sees Rama.
सीता रामं पद्यति।
sītā rāmaṁ paśyet.
Sita might see Rama.

सीता रामं पश्यतु।
sītā rāmaṁ paśyatu.
May Sita see Rama.

Changing the word order

English uses word endings in a limited way, but the meaning of English sentences is still clear. Why? It is because English uses word order to make meaning clear. For example, “Sita sees Rama” and “Rama sees Sita” mean very different things. In English, word order is very important!

But Sanskrit already makes meaning clear through word endings. Does this mean we can change the word order in Sanskrit? Yes, we can. All of the examples below have the same meaning but use different word orders:

रामं: सीतां पद्यति।
rāmaḥ sītāṁ paśyati.
Rama sees Sita.

सीतां रामं: पद्यति।
sītāṁ rāmaḥ paśyati.
Rama sees Sita.

सीतां पद्यति रामं:।
sītāṁ paśyati rāmaḥ.
Rama sees Sita.

रामं: पद्यति सीताम्।
rāmaḥ paśyati sītām.
Rama sees Sita.

पद्यति सीतां रामं:।
paśyati sītāṁ rāmaḥ.
Rama sees Sita.
Rama sees Sita.

Sanskrit sentences generally follow the subject-object-verb order we described above. But word order can change dramatically depending on the context. Certain word orderings simply sound nicer than others, and some ideas are easier to understand depending on the order they appear in.

**Review**

Our *Sentences* topic contains more about Sanskrit sentences and how they work. But for now, let's change focus and learn more about the different kinds of Sanskrit words. In the next three lessons, we will learn about the three main word types that Sanskrit uses.

1. What order does Sanskrit tend to use for its subjects, verbs, and objects?
2. Why can we rearrange the words in a Sanskrit sentence?
Nominals

In the previous lesson, we learned about basic Sanskrit sentences. Sanskrit sentences use three main word types: verbs like paśyati, “naming” words like rāmaḥ, and a third type that we’ll study in a later lesson.

“Naming” words like rāmaḥ are called nouns. But Sanskrit has many other kinds of words that behave similarly to nouns. These include adjectives, which describe a noun:

कृष्णो गाँः खादति।
kṛṣṇo gauḥ khādati.
The black cow eats.

श्वेता स्वप।
śvetā svapiti.
The white one sleeps.

सुखिनो गाजा: पिबति।
sukhino gajāḥ pibanti.
The happy elephants drink.

pronouns, which replace a noun:

स खादति।
sa khādati.
He eats.

सा स्वप।
sā svapiti.
She sleeps.

ते पिबति।
te pibanti.
They drink.

and numerals, which tell us how many of something we have:
एको गाउँ: खादति
eko gauḥ khādati
One cow eats.

एका स्वपि।
ekā svapiti.
One sleeps.

त्रयो गाजः: पिबति।
trayo gajāḥ pibanti.
Three elephants drink.

For convenience, let's call all of these words **nominals**. “Nominal” is a word that means “name-like.” So a nominal is a word that is like a noun.

**Stems and endings**

Let's start our discussion with some simple nominal words:

रामः
rāmaḥ
Rama (as the subject of the sentence)

रामम्
rāmam
Rama (as the object of the sentence)

Each of these words has two parts. First, there is a simple core that expresses the main idea of “Rama”:

राम
rāma
Rama

Second, we have an ending that modifies this basic idea in some way:
राम + ṇ: → राम:
rāma + ṇ → rāmaḥ
Rama (as the subject of the sentence)

राम + म् → रामम्
rāma + m → rāmam
Rama (as the object)

rāma is called a stem, and ṇ and m are called endings. Just as many flowers might grow from a single plant stem, many words might grow from the same word stem.

As you can see in the examples above, a nominal ending can show whether a word is the subject of the sentence or the object of the sentence. These endings can show other kinds of information too:

ः रामाय फलं ददाति।
sa rāmāya phalaṃ dadāti.
He gives a fruit to Rama.

स रामादु वल्लवत्तरः।
sa rāmād balavattarāḥ.
He is stronger than Rama.

Specifically, a nominal ending shows three basic kinds of information in Sanskrit. Let’s learn more about what these three kinds of information are.

**Gender**

The first kind of information we get from a nominal ending is its gender. In the examples below, notice how the nominal ending changes. This change shows a change in the noun’s gender:

गजः पश्यति।
gajah paśyati.
The (male) elephant sees.
Word gender is similar to our real-world concept of male and female genders. Usually, male-gendered beings use a **masculine** gender and female-gendered beings use a **feminine** gender. Sanskrit also has a **neuter** gender that is neither male nor female:

ए ज् फल ज्।

*etat phalam.*

This is a fruit.

Each Sanskrit noun has its own gender. If a noun refers to a person or animal, we can usually guess the noun's gender. But when a noun does *not* refer to a person or animal, it can be hard to guess what the gender should be. For example, consider the nouns below. None of these genders is obvious:

व्रक्ष

vrkṣa

tree (masculine)

फल

phala

fruit (neuter)

अग्नि

agni

fire (masculine)

कीर्ति

kīrti

glory (feminine)

नदी

nadī

river (feminine)
Fortunately, we can usually guess a noun's gender by examining how its stem ends. We'll explain this more in a later lesson.

**Number**

The second kind of information we get from a nominal ending is its **number**. Simply, “number” is the number of items the nominal refers to. It might refer to one item, which is called the **singular**:

> gajaḥ paśyati.
> The (one) elephant sees.

To two items, which is called the **dual**:

> gajau paśyataḥ.
> The two elephants see.

Or to more than two items, which is called the **plural**:

> gajāḥ paśyanti.
> The (many) elephants see.

Notice that the verb *paśyati* changes when the number of the noun changes. Verbs like *paśyati* have number as well. Usually, the verb's number and the subject's number should match.

**Case**

The third kind of information we get from a nominal ending is its **case**. “Case” is a technical word that is hard to define. Roughly, a word's case is the role that the word plays in the sentence.
Sanskrit uses eight different cases. **Case 1** is usually the subject of the action:

सिंहः पश्यति।

\[ siṃhah \ paśyati. \]

The lion sees.

**Case 2** is usually the object:

सिंहो ग्रामं पश्यति।

\[ siṃho grāmaṃ paśyati. \]

The lion sees a village.

**Case 3** usually means “by means of”:

सिंहो मर्गेण ग्रामं गच्छति।

\[ siṃho mārgeṇa grāmaṃ gacchati. \]

The lion goes to the village **by means of the road**.

**Case 4** usually means “for”:

सिंहो मांसाय ग्रामं गच्छति।

\[ siṃho māṃsāya grāmaṃ gacchati. \]

The lion goes to the village **for meat**.

**Case 5** usually means “from”:

सिंहो वनाद् ग्रामं गच्छति।

\[ siṃho vanād grāmaṃ gacchati. \]

The lion goes **from the forest** to the village.

**Case 6** usually means “of”:

सिंहो ग्रामस्य नरान् खादति।

\[ siṃho grāmasya narān khādati. \]

The lion eats the men **of the village** (or, **the village’s men**).

**Case 7** usually means “on” or “in”: **
The lion walks in the village.

And case 8 is the person being spoken to:

Hey lion! Go to the forest.

Using adjectives

In Sanskrit, we can use adjectives without a noun:

The black one goes.

The handsome ones eat.

If we do use a noun, the adjective must use the same gender, case, and number as the noun it describes:
More technically, we can say that an adjective must **agree** with the noun it describes.

**Review**

Nominal words are one of the three main types of Sanskrit words. In the next lesson, we'll learn about the second main type: verbs like *paśyati* and *carati*.

1. Nominal words have two basic parts. What are those two basic parts?
2. What are the three genders?
3. What are the three numbers?
4. Choose one of the eight cases and explain what it means.
Verbs

In the previous lesson, we learned that there are three main types of Sanskrit words: verbs like paśyati, nominal words like rāmaḥ, and a third type that we'll study in the next lesson.

Verbs are the core of a Sanskrit sentence. In fact, we can make a complete sentence with just a single verb:

पश्यन्ति।
paśyanti.
They see.

Roots, stems and endings

Let's start our discussion with some simple verbs:

नयन्ति
nayanti
They lead.

नयसि
nayasi
You lead.

नयामि
nayāmi
I lead.

Like nominals, verbs have two parts: a stem that carries the basic meaning of the verb and an ending that modifies this basic meaning. In the examples above, naya is the stem, and it has the basic sense of “leading.” By combining naya with endings like -ti, -nti, and -āmi, we create different kinds of verbs.

But we can go deeper than this. Consider the verbs below:
They lead.

They will lead.

They make (someone) lead.

If we remove the -nti ending, we see three different stems: naya, neṣya, and nāyaya. All of them have slightly different meanings. But all of them have to do with “leading” something, and all of them start with similar sounds.

Thousands of years ago, the people who studied Sanskrit grammar thought about words like nayanti, neṣyanti, and nāyayati and considered them deeply. They decided that all of these words share a common element, nī, from which all of these stems arise.

nī is called a verb root. Just as flower stems grow from a shared root, verb stems grow from a verb root. The verb root is short, compact, and contains the basic meaning of the stems and verbs that grow from it:

नि → नय → नयन्ति

nī → naya → nayanti
lead → lead → They lead.

नि → नेष्य → नेष्यन्ति

nī → neṣya → neṣyanti
lead → will lead → They will lead.

नि → नायि → नाययन्ति

nī → nāyi → nāyayanti
lead → make lead → They make (someone) lead.
Not all verbs have a clear and obvious root. But most verbs do.

Creating new verb roots

Traditional grammar defines a list of around 2000 verb roots. But Sanskrit also provides a few ways to create new verb roots from existing ones. These derived roots modify the root’s basic meaning in some way.

For example, if we add i to a verb root that means “X,” we create a new verb root that “make (someone) do X.” You can see some examples of this below.

नी → नायि → नाययन्ति  

nī → nāyi → nāyayanti  
lead → make lead → They make (someone) lead.

चर् → चारि → चारयन्ति  

caṛi → cārayanti  
walk → make walk → They make (someone) walk.

Note that i causes the sounds in the root to change. These kinds of changes are common when we add sounds to verb roots.

We can even create roots by using different nominal words:

मूत्र → मूत्रयति  

mūtra → mūtrayati  
urine, pee → He pees.

We will learn more about all of these derived roots in a later lesson. But for now, let’s focus on verb endings and the information they contain.

Person

Generally, verb endings express five kinds of basic information. The first is the verb’s person. “I go” and “He goes” express the same idea, but each has a different perspective. This perspective is the person of the verb.

Like English, Sanskrit has three persons. In the traditional Sanskrit order, we have the third person:
नयाति
nayati
(Someone) leads.

the second person:

नयासि
nayasi
You lead.

and the first person:

नयामि
nayāmi
I lead.

**Number**

The second kind of information is the verb’s **number**, which is the same idea as a nominal’s number. As before, we have the **singular**:

नयाति
nayati
(Someone) leads.

the dual:

नयातः
nayataḥ
The two of them lead.

and the **plural**:

नयान्ति
nayanti
They all lead.
**Tense-mood**

The third kind of information is the verb's **tense-mood**. A verb's **tense** is just the time period a verb refers to:

- नयति
  - nayati
  - someone leads

- नेष्यति
  - nesyati
  - someone will lead

- नेता
  - netā
  - someone will (eventually) lead

- अनयत्
  - anayat
  - someone led

- अनेषीत्
  - anaiśīt
  - someone (recently) led

- निनाय
  - nināya
  - someone led (long ago)

And a verb's **mood** is the way the verb expresses that information:

- नयेत्
  - nayet
  - someone might lead

- नयतु
  - nayatu
  - (we command that) someone may lead
नीयत्

नीयत्
(we hope that) someone may lead

अनेष्यत्

अनेष्यत्
someone would lead or would have led

In Sanskrit, these two categories are usually combined, which is why we call them tense-moods. Sanskrit has ten different tense-moods combinations, and you can see all ten of them in the examples above.

prayoga

The fourth kind of information is the verb's prayoga. prayoga is similar to what we call “active voice” and “passive voice” in English. In Sanskrit, we have kartari prayoga (“agent usage”), which is like the English active voice:

नारः कर्म करोति।

नारः karma karoti.
The man does work.

नारः स्वपि।

नारः svapiti.
The man sleeps.

karmāṇi prayoga (“object usage”), which is like the English passive voice:

नारे न क्रियेत।

nareṇa karma kriyate.
Work is being done by the man.

and bhāve prayoga (“stative usage”), which we use instead of karmāṇi prayoga if the verb doesn't use an object. bhāve prayoga looks almost identical to karmāṇi prayoga:
नरेण सुप्यते।
nareṇa supyate.
There is sleeping by the man. (The man sleeps.)

*pada*

The fifth kind of information is the verb's *pada*. Simply, some verb endings are called *parasmaipada*:

रामश् चरति
rāmaś carati
Rama walks.

And some are called *ātmanepada*:

रामो मन्यते
rāmo manyate
Rama thinks.

For some roots, *parasmaipada* and *ātmanepada* endings sometimes imply different meanings:

नरः पचति
narah pacati
The man cooks *(for others)*.

नरः पचते
narah pacate
The man cooks *(for himself)*.

But often, they don't have any major difference in meaning. We will revisit *pada* in a future lesson.

**Review**

1. What are the three basic parts of a Sanskrit verb?
2. What are the three persons?
3. What are the three numbers?
4. What are the three *prayogas*?
5. What are the two *padas*?
Uninflected words

Sanskrit sentences use three basic types of words: verbs like paśyati, nominals like rāmaḥ, and a third category that we can call uninflected words. For example, the common word na (“not”) is an uninflected word:

\[
\text{गजो न गच्छति।}
\]
\[
gajo na gacchati.
\]
The elephant does not go.

What does uninflected mean? In Sanskrit, we can change a word to express different meanings:

\[
\text{नी → नयन्ति}
\]
\[
nī → nayanti
\]
lead → they lead

The technical name for these kinds of word changes is inflection. Many Sanskrit words are inflected, and many Sanskrit words are uninflected. Uninflected words can still be changed by sandhi, but otherwise, they always stay the same.

For example, consider the examples below. In each sentence, the nominal and verb change. But the uninflected word na stays the same:

\[
\text{गजो न गच्छति।}
\]
\[
gajo na gacchati.
\]
The elephant does not go.

\[
\text{गजो न गमिष्यत:।}
\]
\[
gajau na gamisyataḥ.
\]
The two elephants will not go.

\[
\text{गजा न गच्छेयुः।}
\]
\[
gajā na gaccheyuḥ.
\]
The elephants might not go.
Uninflected words are simple. So in this lesson, we will simply learn about a few different kinds of uninflected words.

**ca and vā**

ca is a common uninflected word that means “and.” Notice how ca is used in the examples below:

रामः सीता च गच्छति।
\( rāmaḥ sitā ca gacchataḥ. \)
Rama and Sita go.

रामः सीता गजश् च गच्छन्ति।
\( rāmaḥ sitā gajaś ca gacchanti. \)
Rama, Sita, and the elephant go.

In English, we use the word “and” just before the last item in our list: Rama, Sita, and the elephant. But in Sanskrit, ca comes at the end of the list of items: \( rāmaḥ sitā gajaś ca. \)

We can use vā, which means “or,” in the same way:

रामः सीता वा गच्छति।
\( rāmaḥ sitā vā gacchati. \)
Rama or Sita goes.

रामः सीता गजो वा गच्छति।
\( rāmaḥ sitā gajo vā gacchati. \)
Rama, Sita, or the elephant goes.

We can also repeat ca to say “Both ... and ...” and vā to say “Either ... or ...” Here are some examples:

रामश् च सीता च गच्छति।
\( rāmaś ca sitā ca gacchataḥ. \)
Both Rama and Sita go.
Either Rama or Sita goes.

In an earlier lesson, we learned that Sanskrit word order is very flexible. But it is not completely flexible. Specifically, ca and vā cannot appear at the start of a sentence. This means that the example sentence below is not correct Sanskrit:

* च रामः सीता गच्छतः।
* ca rāmaḥ sītā gacchataḥ.

**saha and vinā**

We can also use uninflected words to modify the basic sense of another word. For example, there is a nominal case that usually means “by means of”:

रामो गजेन नगरं गच्छति।
rāmo gajena nagaraṃ gacchati.
Rama goes to the city by means of an elephant.

Do you remember what we call this case? We call it case 3. If we use the uninflected words saha or vinā with a case 3 word, we can refine the basic sense that case 3 expresses:

रामो गजेन सह नगरं गच्छति।
rāmo gajena saha nagaraṃ gacchati.
Rama goes to the city with an elephant.

रामो गजेन विना नगरं गच्छति।
rāmo gajena vinā nagaraṃ gacchati.
Rama goes to the city without an elephant.

saha and vinā usually follow the word they modify.
-tvā

As a final example, we can add the suffix -tvā to a verb root. If the root means “X,” the result means “having done X” or “after doing X.” Here are some examples:

नी + त्वा → नीत्वा
nī + tvā → nītvā
lead → having led

कृ + त्वा → कृत्वा
kṛ + tvā → kṛtvā
do, make → having done or made

These new words are used like verbs. In the examples below, the first two sentences are simple, and the third one uses the -tvā ending to create a more complex sentence:

रामो नगरं गच्छति।
rāmo nagaram gacchati.
Rama goes to the city.

राम: सीतां पश्यति।
rāmaḥ sītāṁ paśyati.
Rama sees Sita.

रामो नगरं गत्वा सीतां पश्यति।
rāmo nagaram gatvā sītāṁ paśyati.
Rama, after going to the city, sees Sita.

Review

There are many different kinds of uninflected words, but they are all used in a simple way. Once we create them, we don't have to make any changes for gender, case, number, person, tense-mood, prayoga, or anything else.

1. Sanskrit word order is freer than English word order. Is Sanskrit word order completely free? Can we use whatever word order we like?
Prefixes

So far, our core lessons have covered two major areas:

1. Sanskrit sounds: how they are pronounced, what they are like, and how they interact with each other through sandhi.
2. Sanskrit sentences: what they’re like, what kinds of words they use, and how these words behave.

As we come to the end of our core lessons, we will study the third and final major area of Sanskrit grammar: how to make new Sanskrit words.

Let’s start by learning about prefixes. **Prefixes** are small groups of sounds that we add to the beginning of something else:

\[
\text{गच्छन्ति} \rightarrow \text{आगच्छन्ति}
\]

\[
gacchanti \rightarrow āgacchanti
\]

they go → they come (“go here”)

Most prefixes are uninflected words. By adding prefixes to a word, we can change its basic meaning.

**Verb prefixes**

**Verb prefixes** are prefixes that we add to a verb root. These prefixes usually change a root's basic meaning in one of three different ways. Often, the prefix changes the root's meaning in a straightforward way:

\[
\text{आ} + \text{गच्छन्ति} \rightarrow \text{आगच्छन्ति}
\]

\[
ā + gacchanti \rightarrow āgacchanti
\]

here/toward + they go → they come (“go here”)

Sometimes, the prefix creates a more idiomatic change:

\[
\text{अव} + \text{गच्छन्ति} \rightarrow \text{अवगच्छन्ति}
\]

\[
ava + gacchanti \rightarrow avagacchanti
\]

down + they go → they understand
And sometimes, the prefix intensifies the word’s basic meaning or produces essentially no change.

Let’s learn about two prefixes here. First is the prefix ā-. (We add “-” to emphasize that this is a prefix.) ā- has the basic sense of “here” or “toward.” Notice how it affects the basic meaning of the verbs in the examples below:

\[ \text{गच्छन्ति} \rightarrow \text{आगच्छन्ति} \]
\[ \text{gacchanti} \rightarrow \text{āagacchanti} \]
they go \rightarrow they come (“go here”)

\[ \text{नयन्ति} \rightarrow \text{आनयन्ति} \]
\[ \text{nayanti} \rightarrow \text{ānayanti} \]
they lead \rightarrow they bring (“lead here”)

Next is the prefix sam-. sam- has the basic sense of “with” or “together.” Again, notice how it affects the basic meaning of the verbs below:

\[ \text{गच्छन्ति} \rightarrow \text{संगच्छन्ति} \]
\[ \text{gacchanti} \rightarrow \text{saṃgacchanti} \]
they go \rightarrow they meet (“go together”)

\[ \text{नयन्ति} \rightarrow \text{संनयन्ति} \]
\[ \text{nayanti} \rightarrow \text{saṃnayanti} \]
they lead \rightarrow They unite (“lead (others) together”)

Prefixes can also be combined. Up above, we learned what āgacchanti and saṃgacchanti mean. So what do you think samāgacchanti means?

\[ \text{गच्छन्ति} \rightarrow \text{समागच्छन्ति} \]
\[ \text{gacchanti} \rightarrow \text{samāgacchanti} \]
they go \rightarrow they come together; they convene (“go together here”)

\[ \text{नयन्ति} \rightarrow \text{समानयन्ति} \]
\[ \text{nayanti} \rightarrow \text{samānayanti} \]
they lead \rightarrow they gather (“lead together here”)

Nominal prefixes

Nominal prefixes are prefixes that we add to a nominal stem. These prefixes usually modify the stem’s meaning in a straightforward way:

शोक → अशोक
šoka → ašoka
grief, sorrow → without grief or sorrow

Again, let’s learn about two prefixes here. First is the prefix a-. a- has different meanings in different contexts. But when attached to a nominal, a- has the basic meaning of “not”:

हिसा → अहिसा
hiṃsā → ahiṃsā
violece → non-violence

बल → अबल
bala → abala
strength → without strength; weak, powerless

If the stem starts with a vowel, we use an- instead:

इष्ट → अनिष्ट (अन्न-इष्ट)
iṣṭa → anिṣṭa (an-iṣṭa)
wanted → unwanted

This prefix is related to the prefixes in words like “in-credible” “a-moral,” and “un-able.”

Next is the prefix sa-. Like sam-, sa- has the basic sense of “with” or “together”:

बल → सबल
bala → sabala
strength → with strength; strong, powerful
Review

Prefixes are quite simple. There are a few small subtleties to them, but we can discuss those in a later lesson.
Suffixes

In the previous lesson, we learned that prefixes are small groups of sounds that we add to the *beginning* of something. A group of sounds that we add to the *end* of something is called a *suffix*.

Sanskrit has many different kinds of suffixes. Verb and nominal endings are all suffixes. So are the suffixes that turn verb roots into verb stems:

- नी + अ → नय
  - nī + a → naya
  - lead → lead

- नी + ष्य → नेष्य
  - nī + ṣya → nesya
  - lead → will lead

- नी + इ → नायि
  - nī + i → nāyi
  - lead → make lead

Sound changes

Sanskrit suffixes can cause many different sound changes. Most commonly, a suffix will make the root's vowel change. Usually, the root's vowel will become a compound vowel, and that vowel might change due to sandhi rules:

- नी + अ → ने + अ → नय
  - nī + a → ne + a → naya

In English, we usually call these kinds of changes *vowel strengthening*. The idea is that a compound vowel is “stronger” than the simple vowel it comes from. You can see some examples of vowel strengthening in the examples below:

- नी + अ → नय
  - nī + a → naya
Since we know Sanskrit sounds well, we can see a connection between त, ए, अई, आय, and अय: त is the root vowel, ए and अई are its compound vowels, and आय and अय appear due to sandhi. This is why it is so important to understand Sanskrit’s sounds and sandhi rules.

**Root suffixes**

Root suffixes are suffixes that we add directly to a verb root. Usually, they create nouns and adjectives. There are too many suffixes to list here, but let’s consider two examples.

First is the suffix -अ. (We add the “-” sign at the beginning to emphasize that this is a suffix.) -अ has many functions, but it commonly creates abstract nouns:

- 
  विद् → वेद
  
  जी → जय
  
  युज् → योग

In the last example above, note that ज becomes ग. The sounds च and ज often become क and ग when certain suffixes follow them.

Next is the suffix -टा. -टा does not strengthen the root’s vowel. When added to a root that means “to X,” this suffix usually means “(has been) X-ed.”
Can we use prefixes and suffixes together? Yes. For example, let's use the prefix sam- that we used in the previous lesson. In addition to meaning “with” or “together,” this prefix can also mean “completely” or “fully”:

सांजि → संजय
samjī → samjaya
completely conquer → complete victory; Sanjay (a name)

Let's try combining sam with the root kr above. By a specific grammar rule, this combination becomes saṃskṛ with an extra s. Does saṃskṛ look familiar to you?

सांस्कृ + त → सांस्कृत
saṃskṛ + ta → saṃskṛta
completely or fully make; refine, perfect → perfected, refined; Sanskrit

Nominal suffixes

Nominal suffixes are suffixes that we usually add to nominal stems. As before, there are too many to list here. But as before, let's consider two examples.

First is the suffix -in. When we add -in to a word that means “X,” we create a word that means “characterized by X”:
योग + इन् → योगिन्
yoga + in → yogin
yoga → characterized by yoga; a yogi
(Note that the -in suffix removes the final -a of yoga.)

Next is the suffix -tva. When we add -tva to a word that means “X,” we create a word that means “X-ness”:

योग + त्व → योगत्व
yoga + tva → yogatva
yoga → “yoga-ness”; the state of yoga

Review

Sanskrit has many different root and nominal suffixes, and we can use these suffixes to create a variety of complex and expressive words.

1. What does “vowel strengthening” mean?
2. What is the difference between a root suffix and a nominal suffix?
Compounds

This is our last core lesson. Here, we will learn about *compounds*, one of Sanskrit's most notable features.

Compounds are words that we make by combining multiple words. Compounds are short and simple, and they save time for both the speaker and the listener:

\[
\text{गजानां वनम्} → \text{गजवनम्} \\
gajānāṃ vanam → gajavanam
\]

the forest of elephants

Sanskrit uses compounds extensively. In some styles of Sanskrit, almost every sentence will have a compound. And these compounds can also be quite long and intricate.

In this lesson, we will learn about two basic types of compounds.

**dvandva**

In our first type of compound, we have two words that are in a list together. Here are some English examples of this type:

- Indochina (India and China)
- tractor-trailer (a tractor and a trailer)

In Sanskrit, these compounds are called *dvandva* compounds. The word *dvandva* literally means “pair.” Any set of words that could be combined with the word *ca* (“and”) can be combined into a dvandva:

\[
\text{राम: सीता च} → \text{रामसीते} \\
rāmaḥ sitā ca → rāmasīte
\]

Rama and Sita

\[
\text{राम: सीता लक्ष्मण: च} → \text{रामसीतालक्ष्मणा:} \\
rāmaḥ sitā lakṣmaṇaḥ ca → rāmasītalakṣmaṇaḥ
\]

Rama, Sita, and Lakshmana
tatpuṣa

In our second type of compound, the first word describes the second in some way. Here are some English examples of this type:

- “wallpaper” (paper for a wall)
- “chessboard” (a board for chess)
- “beekeeper” (keeper of bees)

In all of these compounds, the second word is the main idea, and the first word modifies it. In Sanskrit, this kind of compound is called a tatpuṣa compound.

Here are some Sanskrit examples of tatpuṣa compounds:

रामस्य माता → राममाता

rāmasya mātā → rāmamātā
Rama’s mother

रामस्य पुत्रः → रामपुत्रः

rāmasya putraḥ → rāmaputraḥ
Rama’s son

रामस्य पत्नी → रामपत्नी

rāmasya patnī → rāmapatnī
Rama’s wife

The word tatpuṣa (“his man”) comes from the words tat (“he, that one”) and puruṣa (“man”). So, the word “tatpuṣa” is itself a tatpuṣa compound:

tasya puṣaḥ → tatpuṣaḥ
his man

Understanding compounds

Compounds are easy to understand if we know their context. For example, the word “wallpaper” probably has a clear meaning to you, and you might have even
seen or felt wallpaper before. But someone from another culture might create interpretations like:

- “paper that is also a wall,” as in “I built this house with wallpaper.”
- “paper that is on a wall,” as in “I hung my diploma next to my other wall-papers.”

These interpretations don’t occur to you because you know the cultural context. You know what wallpaper is.

Many Sanskrit compounds are the same way. If you know their cultural context and are familiar with them, they are easy to understand. If not, they can be difficult to understand.

But what do we do if we don’t understand the culture at all? Thankfully, there are some basic rules of thumb that we can use to tell compounds apart. For example, if the words in a compound are all names, or all foods, or all flowers — that is, if they all have the same “type” — then the compound is probably a dvandva.

There are other basic rules we can use for the other types of compounds. We’ll discuss these rules in a later lesson. (But as always, the best way is to read a lot of Sanskrit!)

**Review**

1. Describe the dvandva compound.
2. Describe the tatpuruṣa compound. Think of your own English example.
Review

Congratulations! You have completed the core lessons. Take a moment to celebrate your hard work and review what you have learned.

We encourage you to set grammar aside for now and focus on finding interesting content. (See our resources page for details.) But if you want to continue, you can explore the other topics of this guide in whatever order you like. Go wherever your interests take you.

Sounds and sandhi

We started by learning about the Sanskrit sounds and their traditional order:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>अ</th>
<th>आ</th>
<th>इ</th>
<th>ई</th>
<th>उ</th>
<th>ऊ</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a</td>
<td>ā</td>
<td>i</td>
<td>ī</td>
<td>u</td>
<td>ū</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ऋ</td>
<td>र</td>
<td>र</td>
<td>ल</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>r</td>
<td>r̄</td>
<td>l</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ए</td>
<td>ऐ</td>
<td>ओ</td>
<td>औ</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>e</td>
<td>ai</td>
<td>o</td>
<td>au</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>अः</td>
<td>अः</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aṁ</td>
<td>aḥ</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>क</td>
<td>ख</td>
<td>ग</td>
<td>घ</td>
<td>ङ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ka</td>
<td>kha</td>
<td>ga</td>
<td>gha</td>
<td>na</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>च</td>
<td>छ</td>
<td>ज</td>
<td>झ</td>
<td>ञ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ca</td>
<td>cha</td>
<td>ja</td>
<td>jha</td>
<td>ṇa</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ट</td>
<td>ठ</td>
<td>ड</td>
<td>ढ</td>
<td>ण</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ṭa</td>
<td>ṭha</td>
<td>ḍa</td>
<td>ḍha</td>
<td>ṇa</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>त</td>
<td>थ</td>
<td>द</td>
<td>ध</td>
<td>न</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ta</td>
<td>tha</td>
<td>da</td>
<td>dha</td>
<td>na</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>प</td>
<td>फ</td>
<td>ब</td>
<td>भ</td>
<td>म</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pa</td>
<td>pha</td>
<td>ba</td>
<td>bha</td>
<td>ma</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
We then learned how to split these sounds into syllables:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>य</th>
<th>र</th>
<th>ल</th>
<th>व</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ya</td>
<td>ra</td>
<td>la</td>
<td>va</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>श</td>
<td>ष</td>
<td>स</td>
<td>ह</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>śa</td>
<td>ṣa</td>
<td>sa</td>
<td>ha</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

dharmakṣetre kurukṣetre → dha rma kṣe tre ku ru kṣe tre

Then, we studied some simple sandhi rules and learned how these sounds combine with each other.

**Words and sentences**

After studying sounds and sandhi, we moved to sentences and words. We learned what Sanskrit sentences are like and how they behave. We also learned about the three basic types of Sanskrit words: nominals, verbs, and uninflected words.

We learned that nominals express information like gender:

| गजः पश्यति। |
|---|---|
| gajah paśyati. | The (male) elephant sees. |

| गजा पश्यति। |
|---|---|
| gajaḥ paśyati. | The (female) elephant sees. |

case:

| गजश् चरति। |
|---|---|
| gajaś carati. | The elephant walks. |
रामो गजं चरति।
rāmo gajam carati.
Rama walks to the elephant.

and number:

गजः पश्यति।
gajah paśyati.
The elephant sees.

गजो पश्यत: ।
gajau paśyataḥ.
The two elephants see.

गजा: पश्यति।
gajāḥ paśyanti.
The (many) elephants see.

We also learned that verbs express information like person:

नयति
nayati
(Someone) leads.

नयसि
nayasi
You lead.

नयामि
nayāmi
I lead.

number:

नयति
nayati
(Someone) leads.
नयतः
nayataḥ
The two of them lead.

नयन्ति
nayanti
All of them lead.

tense-mood:

नयामि
nayāmi
I lead.

नेष्यामि
nesyāmi
I will lead.

नयेयम्
nayeyam
I might lead.

prayoga:

नयसि
nayasi
You lead.

नियासे
niyase
You are led.

and pada, which we will discuss in a later lesson.

Prefixes, suffixes, and compounds

Finally, we learned about how to create new words using prefixes:
गच्छन्ति → आगच्छन्ति
gacchanti → āgacchanti
They go. → They come.

हिसा → अहिसा
hīṃsā → ahiṃsā
vviolence → non-violence

suffixes:

युज् → योग
yuj → yoga
yoke, join, unite → yoking, junction, union; yoga

योग → योगिन्
yoga → yogin
yoga → yogi

and compounds:

राम: सीता च → रामसीते
rāmaḥ sītā ca → rāmasīte
Rama and Sita

रामस्य माता → राममाता
rāṃasya mātā → rāmamātā
Rama's mother

Questions

Together, these core lessons are a complete high-level summary of Sanskrit grammar. What remain, of course, are the details.

1. What are the five points of pronunciation?
2. Which vowels are compound vowels?
3. What is the basic principle that most sandhi changes follow?
4. Why can we reorder the words in a Sanskrit sentence?
5. What are the basic parts of a verb?
6. What are the basic parts of a noun?
7. Describe one of the Sanskrit compounds we learned about.
Sounds
Our core lessons already discussed the various Sanskrit sounds in detail. Here, provide much more detail about how to pronounce and describe these sounds. Where appropriate, we will also provide the standard English and Sanskrit terms.

Traditionally, Sanskrit has these main points of pronunciation:

- the soft palate (**kaṇṭhah**, “throat”)
- the hard palate (**tālu**)
- the top of the roof of the mouth (**mūrdhā**, “head”)
- the teeth (**dantāḥ**)
- the lips (**oṣṭhau**)
- the nose (**nāsika**)
- the base of the tongue (**jiḥvāmūlam**)

Some lists also include the chest (**uraḥ**) as the source of the flow of air.

In order, sounds pronounced with these points of pronunciation are called:

- **velar** sounds (**kaṇṭhya**), or **guttural** in some old books
- **palatal** sounds (**tālavya**)
- **retroflex** sounds (**mūrdhanya**), or **cerebral** or **lingual** in some old books
- **dental** sounds (**dantya**)
- **labial** sounds (**oṣṭhya**)
- **nasal** sounds (**anunāsika**)
- **uvular** sounds (**jiḥvāmūliya**)

Since **va** is pronounced with both the teeth and the lips, it is called **labio-dental** (**dantoṣṭhya**). And since **o** and **au** are pronounced with both the soft palate and the lips, they are called **labio-velar** (**kaṇṭhoṣṭhya**).

You do not need to remember any of these new terms. We list them here just for your reference.
Vowels
Also known as: svarāḥ ("tones"), akṣarāṇi ("syllables"), ac

Vowels are simple, open sounds:

अ
a

By changing a in different ways, we can create the full set of Sanskrit vowels. In this lesson, we will learn about all of the ways we can modify this vowel.

Point of pronunciation
Also known as: uccāraṇa-sthāna ("pronunciation place")

First, we can change the vowel's point of pronunciation. Sanskrit vowels use five basic points of pronunciation:

• the soft palate
• the hard palate
• the edge of the roof of the mouth
• the base of the teeth
• the lips

By using these five points of pronunciation, we can create five basic vowels:

• a with the soft palate
• i with the hard palate
• r with the edge of the roof of the mouth
• l with the base of the teeth
• u with the lips
Vowel that use just one point of pronunciation are called simple vowels (samānakṣarāni, “simple vowels”). If we use multiple points of pronunciation, we create compound vowels (sandhyakṣarāṇī, “joined vowels”):

- e and ai with the soft palate and the hard palate
- o and au with the soft palate and the lips

![Vowels](e, o, ai, au)

**Length**

Also known as: kāla (“time”)

Second, we can change the vowel’s length. Most Sanskrit vowels are either short (hrasva) and long (dīrgha). Short vowels are pronounced for one unit of time (ekamātra, “with one measure”), and long vowels are pronounced for twice as long as short vowels (dvi-mātra, “with two measures”).

All of the short vowels, except for ķ, have a long version:

![Long Vowels](ā, ī, ē, ō)

All of the compound vowels are already long, and they have no short form.

There is also a third length, protracted (pluta), that is mainly used in Vedic Sanskrit. All of the simple and compound vowels can be pluta. Pluta vowels are written with a 3 added to the end of them:

![Pluta Vowels](a, ā, ā3)

So, we have the pluta vowels ā3, ī3, ō3, ē3, ķ3, e3, ai3, o3, and au3.
Nasality
Also known as: ānunāsiyaḥ ("nasality")

Third, we can make the vowel nasal (anunāsiṣṭaḥ) or non-nasal (an-anunāsiṣṭaḥ). Nasal vowels are rarely used in normal Sanskrit.

![nasal vowels](image)

Accent
Also known as: svāra ("tone")

Fourth, we can change the vowel's accent (svāra). In Vedic compositions, accent is used extensively, but it does not appear anymore in standard Sanskrit. There are three basic accents:

- **anudattā** ("not raised") or **grave**, which is a low tone
- **udattā** ("raised") or **acute**, which is a high tone
- **svāritā** ("voiced") or **circumflex**, which is mix of the high and low tones. But in many styles of Vedic chanting, the svāritā is instead a plain high tone that is higher than the udattā.

Here are the three accents as they are written in Devanagari. From left to right, we have anudattā, udattā, and svāritā:

![accents](image)

The different Vedic accents and their pronunciation are out of scope for our grammar guide.
-kāra and -varṇa

In English, we often say “the letter a” rather than just “a.” Likewise, in Sanskrit, we can add -kāra to the end of any vowel to give it a more usable name. Thus Krishna says in the Bhagavad Gita:

अक्षराणां अकारो द्वितीयम्
akṣaraṇāṁ akāro 'smi
Of sounds, I am the letter a.

We can also give names to certain vowel families. For example, a has:

- three possible lengths (short, long, and protacted)
- three possible accents (udātta, anudātta, and svarita)
- two kinds of nasality (nasal and non-nasal)

In total, this gives us $3 \times 3 \times 2 = 18$ different variations on the vowel a. You can see all of them below:

अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ अ

We can refer to all 18 of these variations by the name avarṇa (“the a class”). Two sounds in the same varṇa are called similar (sa-varṇa, “of the same varṇa”).

Just as we have avarṇa, we also have:

- ivarṇa for the 18 variations of i
- uvarṇa for the 18 variations of u
- rvarṇa for the 18 variations of r
- lvarṇa for the 12 variations of l
ḷvarṇa has only 12 variations because ṭ has no long version.

**vivṛta and saṃvṛta**

Let’s dwell on a a little longer. Have you noticed that a is slightly different from the other vowels?

i and ō have similar pronunciations, except that i is short and ō is long. This is similarly true for the sounds of uvarṇa, ṅvarṇa, and ṭvarṇa. But although a and ā are part of the same varṇa, a is actually slightly different from ā and the other vowels.

Except for a, all vowels are called vivṛta (“uncovered”, “open”) because they are pronounced with the vowel cords uncontracted. a, however, is called saṃvṛta (“covered,” “contracted”) because it is pronounced with the vocal cords in a more contracted position.

To compare these sounds to English, we can say that all the sounds in ivarṇa sound like the “ee” in “teeth” but with different modifications. But although ā sounds like the “a” in “father,” a does not have that sound. Instead, a sounds like the “u” in “mud.”

**Review**

Each of the vowels a, i, u, and r has 18 different forms (3 lengths, 3 accents, and optional nasality). Each of the vowels ṭ, e, ai, o, and au has just 12 different forms, since ṭ has no long form and the others have no short form.

1. What are the three vowel lengths?
2. What are the three vowel accents?
3. Which vowels are in uvarṇa?
4. Which vowels are saṃvṛta?
Consonants
Also known as: vyañjanāni (“embellishments”), hal

Consonants are sounds that we pronounce by changing the basic flow of air through the mouth. In Sanskrit, consonants use three different kinds of air flow:

- **sprṣṭam**: full contact at the points of pronunciation. Air no longer flows through the mouth at all. This applies for the sounds ka through ma.
- **iṣatsprṣṭam**: slight contact at the points of pronunciation. Air flows through the mouth in a highly constricted way. This applies for the sounds ya through va.
- **iṣadvivṛtam**: loose contact at the points of pronunciation. Air flows through the mouth in a less constricted way. This applies for the sounds śa through ha.

**ka through ma**
Also known as: sparśāḥ (“contacted (sounds)”)  

The first twenty-five consonants are often arranged in a square with 5 rows and 5 columns:
For all of these sounds, the points of pronunciation make full contact with each other. Thus they are called *sparśāḥ* (“contacts”). In English grammar, the nasal sounds are called *nasals*, and the rest are called *stops*.

As a reminder, here is how these sounds are usually described:

- The sounds in the first and second columns are called *unvoiced* (*aghoṣāḥ*), and the others are called *voiced* (*ghoṣavantaḥ*).
- The sounds in the second and fourth columns are called *aspirated* (*mahāprāṇāḥ*), and the others are called *unaspirated* (*alpaprāṇāḥ*).
- The sounds in the fifth column are called *nasal* (*anunāsikāḥ*).

**ya through va**
Also known as: *antaḥstāḥ* (“in-between (sounds)”)
In Sanskrit, the four semivowels are called *antaḥstha* (“in-between”), perhaps because these consonants are pronounced in a way that is in-between vowels and other consonants:

\[
\begin{array}{cccc}
\text{ya} & \text{ra} & \text{la} & \text{va} \\
\end{array}
\]

Semivowels can also be nasalized. For example, the *anusvāra* is pronounced like a nasal y when y follows it.

**śa through ha**

Also known as: *ūṣmāṇaḥ* (“vapor (sounds)”)  

The last four sounds are called sibilants in English grammar and *ūṣmāṇaḥ* in Sanskrit:

\[
\begin{array}{cccc}
\text{śa} & \text{ṣa} & \text{sa} & \text{ha} \\
\end{array}
\]

As a reminder, ha is voiced. But śa, ṣa, and sa are not.

**ḷa**

In certain styles of Vedic recitation, a da sound between vowels becomes ṭa. And likewise, a ḍha sound between vowels becomes ṭha:

\[
\begin{array}{cc}
\text{ṭa} & \text{ṭha} \\
\end{array}
\]

These consonants appear only in Vedic compositions.
-kāra and -varga

As with the vowels, we can add -kāra to the end of any consonant to give it a more usable name. But ra is called repha (“snarl,” “burr”) instead:

\[\begin{align*}
\text{क} & \rightarrow \text{ककार:} \\
\text{ka} & \rightarrow \text{kakāraḥ} \\
\text{ka} & \rightarrow \text{The letter ka}
\end{align*}\]

\[\begin{align*}
\text{र} & \rightarrow \text{रेफ़:} \\
\text{ra} & \rightarrow \text{rephaḥ} \\
\text{ra} & \rightarrow \text{The letter ra}
\end{align*}\]

We can also use the word -varga (“group, division”) to refer to sets of consonants with similar properties. We have:

- **kavarga** for the first five consonants (ka kha ga gha ña)
- **cavarga** for the next five consonants (ca cha ja jha ña)
- **ṭavarga** for the next five consonants (ṭa ṭha ḍa ḍha ṇa)
- **ṭavarga** for the next five consonants (ta tha da dha na)
- **pavarga** for the next five consonants (pa pha ba bha ma)
- **yavarga** for the semivowels (ya ra la va)
- **śavarga** for the sibilants (śa ṣa sa ha)

**Review**

1. Which sounds are in śavarga?
2. What is another name for the consonant ra?
Other sounds

In this lesson, we will revisit the *anusvāra* and the *visarga*. We will also learn about two variants of the *visarga*: the *upadhmānīya* and the *jihvāmūlīya*.

*anusvāra*

The *anusvāra* appears due to *sandhi*. Usually, it appears when the sound *m* is followed by a consonant sound:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{राम:} & \quad \text{रावणम् हन्ति} \rightarrow \text{रामो} \quad \text{रावणं हन्ति} \\
\text{rāmah} & \quad \text{rāvaṇam} \ hanti \rightarrow \text{rāmo} \quad \text{rāvaṇaṃ} \ hanti
\end{align*}
\]

Rama kills Ravana.

How is the *anusvāra* pronounced? The *anusvāra* is a “pure nasal” sound that has no equivalent in English. You can approximate it by pronouncing *m* while pressing your tongue against the roof of your mouth.

However, the *anusvāra* often becomes many other sounds due to *sandhi*. If it is followed by any consonant except for the ones in *śavarga* (*śa ṣa sa ha*), it usually becomes the closest matching nasal sound:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{संग:} & \rightarrow \text{सञ्जः} \\
\text{saṃgaḥ} & \rightarrow \text{saṃgaḥ} \\
\text{संजय:} & \rightarrow \text{सञ्जयः} \\
\text{saṃjayaḥ} & \rightarrow \text{saṃjayaḥ} \\
\text{संन्यास:} & \rightarrow \text{सञ्ज्ञासः} \\
\text{saṃnyāsaḥ} & \rightarrow \text{sannyāsaḥ} \\
\text{संबन्ध:} & \rightarrow \text{सञ्ज्ञानः} \\
\text{saṃbandhaḥ} & \rightarrow \text{sambandhaḥ}
\end{align*}
\]

And in front of *yavarga* sounds (*ya ra la va*), it becomes a nasalized semivowel.

In general, people don’t like writing these nasal sounds out, so they use the *anusvāra* as a shorthand.
If you would like to read more about the *anusvāra*, we recommend this short monograph by Shriramana Sharma.

**visarga**

Like the *anusvāra*, the visarga also appears due to sandhi. When a word ends in an s or an r sound, that sound becomes the visarga:

\[
\text{नास ज्ञ} \rightarrow \text{नाष्णः} \quad \text{रामस्} \rightarrow \text{रामः} \\
\text{रामस} \rightarrow \text{रामः} \\
\text{मातर्} \rightarrow \text{मातः} \\
\text{मात} \rightarrow \text{मातः}
\]

Mother!

Traditionally, the visarga is often called the *visarjanīya*, which has essentially the same meaning as the word visarga.

**jihvāmūliya and upadhmānīya**

There are two variants of the visarga that are worth knowing. These variants are often used in spoken Sanskrit, but they are not usually written down.

The first is the *jihvāmūliya*. In English linguistics, this is called a voiceless uvular fricative. This sound is like the visarga, but it is pronounced further back in the base of the throat. The *jihvāmūliya*, if it is used, is used in front of the consonants *ka* and *kha*.

The second is the *upadhmānīya*. In English, this sound is called a voiceless bilabial fricative. This sound is similar to the English “f” sound, but it is not pronounced with any help from the teeth; it is pronounced only with the lips. The *upadhmānīya*, if it is used, is used in front of the consonants *pa* and *pha*. 
Modern pronunciation

If you listen to modern Sanskrit pronunciation closely, you might hear certain pronunciations that differ from the traditional descriptions. In this lesson, we will describe some of these differences.

\( r, \bar{r}, \text{and } l \)

The ancient descriptions are clear that \( r, \bar{r}, \text{and } l \) are vowel sounds. Even so, modern speakers often pronounce these vowels like so:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{kṛṣṇa} & \rightarrow \text{kṛṣṇa, kruṣṇa, kṛṣṇa} \\
pitṝn & \rightarrow \text{pitrīn, pitrūn, pitrṝn} \\
kḷpta & \rightarrow \text{klipta, klupta, klrüpta, klrüpta}
\end{align*}
\]

\( l \), especially, has many variants, perhaps because it is so rare.

The \textit{visarga}

In modern times, the \textit{visarga} is often pronounced as an echo of the previous vowel when at the end of a word or sentence:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{muniḥ} & \rightarrow \text{munihi} \\
\text{taiḥ} & \rightarrow \text{taihi} \\
\text{nauḥ} & \rightarrow \text{nauhu}
\end{align*}
\]

\textit{jña}

The combination \textit{jña} often has these pronunciations:
The combinations *hna* and *hma* often have these pronunciations:

- अह्न → अन्ह
  - *ahna* → *anha*

- ब्रह्म → ब्रम्ह
  - *brahma* → *bramha*
Sandhi
The sandhi system

When we speak quickly, we make many kinds of small and subconscious changes to the way we speak. In Sanskrit, these sound changes are called sandhi, which means “joining” or “junction.” In this topic, we will study the different types of sandhi in more detail.

There are many different kinds of sandhi changes. If a vowel comes first, it is called vowel sandhi:

सीता उदकम् इच्छति → सीतोदकम् इच्छति
sītā udakam icchati → sītodakam icchati
Sita wants water.

If a visarga comes first, it is called visarga sandhi:

रामः उदकम् इच्छति → राम उदकम् इच्छति
rāmaḥ udakam icchati → rāma udakam icchati
Rama wants water.

And if a consonant comes first, it is called consonant sandhi:

हनुमान जलम् इच्छति → हनुमान्ज जलम् इच्छति
hanumān jalam icchati → hanumān jalam icchati
Hanuman wants water.

When we learn about sandhi changes, we should also know where they occur. Some sandhi changes occur between the different parts of a single word:

ने + अ + न्ति → नयन्ति
ne + a + nti → nayanti
They lead.

स्त्रो + इन → गजेन
gaja + ina → gajena
by the elephant

Others occur between two different words:
सीता उदकम् इच्छति। → सीतोदकम् इच्छति।
sītā udakam icchati. → sītodakam icchati.
Sita wants water.

Sandhi changes within a single word must always be followed, and sandhi changes between words occur optionally. But although these changes are optional, most Sanskrit texts will use them.
Vowel sandhi

Also known as: svara-sandhi, ac-sandhi

Vowel sandhi is the name for sandhi changes between two adjacent vowels.

Here is a simple example of vowel sandhi:

सीता उदकम् इच्छति → सीतोदकम् इच्छति  
sitā udakam icchati → sitodakam icchati
Sita drinks water.

Table of changes

Generally, there are two ways we can describe sandhi rules:

1. The traditional approach is to study rules. This approach can be difficult at first. But over time, it helps us master all of sandhi’s details.
2. The Western approach is to arrange these changes in a table or grid. This approach is simplistic and misses many details. But it is often easier for beginners to understand.

Each approach has its strengths and weaknesses. In this lesson, we will use both. To start, here is a table that shows the basics of vowel sandhi between two words:
To use this table, find the first sound on the top row and the second sound on the right column. The corresponding cell in the table is the result. For example, if the first sound is \( i \) or \( ī \) and the second sound is \( ē \), then the result is \( yū \).

For details, read the rules below.

**Similar vowels**

If the two vowels are similar, they combine and become long:

\[
\text{सीता अथध्मुः इच्छति} \rightarrow \text{सीताथध्मुः इच्छति}
\]

\( sītā \text{āśvam icchati} \rightarrow sītāśvam icchati \)

Sita wants a horse.

\[
\text{शबरी इषुमुः इच्छति} \rightarrow \text{शबरीषुमुः इच्छति}
\]

\( śabarī \text{iṣum icchati} \rightarrow śabarīṣum icchati \)

Shabari wants an arrow.
Dissimilar vowels

If the two vowels are not similar, one of three things happens.

First: if the first vowel is simple and not *a* or *ā*, it becomes a semivowel:

शबरी अश्व ज्  इच्छ → शबर्य अश्वम इच्छति
śabarī aśvam icchati → śabary aśvam icchati
Shabari wants a horse.

शबरी उदकम् इच्छ → शबर्य उदकम् इच्छति
śabarī udakam icchati → śabary udakam icchati
Shabari wants water.

Second: if the first vowel is *a* or *ā*, the two vowels combine and become a compound vowel:

सीता उदकम् इच्छ → सीतोदकम् इच्छति
sītā udakam icchati → sītodakam icchati
Sita wants water.

But if the second vowel is *ṛ*, *ṝ*, or *ḷ*, it becomes a semivowel instead:

सीता ऋषिम् पश्यति → सीतर्षिम् पश्यति
sītā ṛṣim paśyati → sītarṣim paśyati
Sita sees a rishi.
(Note that the result is *ar*, not *ār*.)

Third: if the first vowel is a compound vowel (*e*, *ai*, *o*, *au*), it becomes *ay*, *āy*, *av*, or *āv*, respectively:

ने + अ + न्ति → नयन्ति
ne + a + nti → nayanti
They lead.

भो + अ + न्ति → भवन्ति
bho + a + nti → bhavanti
They become.
These rules explain most of vowel sandhi. With a few more specific rules, we will have a nearly complete picture of vowel sandhi in Sanskrit.

**Compound vowels at the end of a word**

At the end of a word, the compound vowels -e, -ai, and -o usually make extra changes.

Let's start with -ai since it changes in a more simple way. -ai becomes -ā when a vowel follows it. The idea is that -ai first becomes -āy, as we saw above. Then the y sound is dropped:

\[
\text{स्यकै अश्व ज्  ना} \rightarrow \text{स्यना अश्वअं ना}.
\]

\[
tasyai aśvam dadāmi \rightarrow tasyā aśvaṃ dadāmi.
\]

I give her a horse.

\[
\text{स्यकै उ ज्  ना} \rightarrow \text{स्यना उ अं  ना}.
\]

\[
tasyai udakam dadāmi \rightarrow tasyā udakaṃ dadāmi.
\]

I give her water.

In these examples, note that tasyā ends with a vowel and the next word starts with a vowel. Does vowel sandhi happen again? No. tasyā does not combine further.

-e generally follows the same pattern as -ai. -e becomes -a in front of most vowels:

\[
\text{ते आम्रम् इच्छन्ति} \rightarrow \text{त आम्रम् इच्छन्ति}.
\]

\[
te āmram icchanti. \rightarrow ta āmram icchanti.
\]

They want a mango.

\[
\text{ते उदकम् इच्छन्ति} \rightarrow \text{त उदकम् इच्छन्ति}.
\]

\[
te udakam icchanti. \rightarrow ta udakaṃ icchanti.
\]

They want water.

But if the second vowel is a, then -e doesn't change. Instead, the a disappears:
They want a horse.

This change is similar to what happens in the combination \( ah + a \). \( a \) disappears often in Sanskrit:

\[
\text{रामः अश्वम इच्छति।} \rightarrow \text{रामो अश्वम इच्छति।}
\]

\( rāmaḥ aśvam icchanti. \rightarrow rāmo 'śvam icchanti. \)

Rama wants a horse.

-o generally follows the same pattern as -e.

**Vowels that don't use sandhi**

The vowels -ī, -ū and -e, if they are part of a word that uses the dual number, are never changed by sandhi:

\[
\text{अग्निरी अपश् ज्।}
\]

\( agnī apaśyam \)

I saw the two fires.

\[
\text{रामो बाहू उद्यच्छति।}
\]

\( rāmo bāhū udyacchati \)

Rama raises his two arms.

\[
\text{तौ लभतेते अश्वनान।}
\]

\( tau labhete aśvān \)

The two of them obtain horses.

**Verb prefixes**

If a verb prefix ends with \( a \) or \( ā \) and the root starts with \( r \), the two combine to form \( ār \) instead of the usual \( ar \):

\[
\text{ते अश्वम इच्छन्ति।} \rightarrow \text{ते अश्वम इच्छन्ति।}
\]

\( te aśvam icchanti. \rightarrow te 'śvam icchanti. \)
उप + ṛच्छति → उपार्च्छति

upa + rcchati → upārcchati
(Someone) approaches.
(a + r becomes ār because upa is a verb prefix.)

सीता ṛच्छति → सीतच्छति

sitā rcchati → sitarcchati
Sita goes.
(ā + r becomes ar because sitā is not a verb prefix.)

**Review**

There are many small details to vowel sandhi. But this lesson is a complete summary of its most common patterns. As you read more Sanskrit, you will understand vowel sandhi instinctively.

We do not recommend memorizing the rules above. But if you would like to practice these rules, you can try applying sandhi changes to the examples below:

सीता एव पृच्छति।
sitā eva prcchati.
Sita herself asks.

अश्वनाष्णः फलनान इच्छन्ति।
aśvāḥ phalāni icchanti.
The horses wants the fruits.

नरौ नगराणि आगच्छत:।
narau nagarāṇi āgacchataḥ.
Two men come to the city.
visarga sandhi

visarga sandhi is the name for sandhi changes where the first sound is the visarga. Here is a simple example of visarga sandhi:

राम: योद्धम् इच्छति → रामो योद्धम् इच्छति।
rāmaḥ yoddhum icchati → rāmo yoddhum icchati.
Rama wants to fight.

Many Sanskrit words end in the visarga, so visarga sandhi is very common.

Where does the visarga come from?

The visarga itself comes from a sandhi change. s and r become the visarga when they appear at the end of a word:

रामस् → राम:  
rāmas → rāmaḥ  
Rama

मातर् → मात:  
mātar → mātaḥ  
mother!

Most of the visargas you hear and see will come from s. A very small number will come from r. If the visarga comes from r, its sandhi rules have some small differences. So it is important for us to know which sound the visarga comes from.

Table of changes

Some learners find it helpful to see these sandhi changes in a table. So, here is a basic summary of visarga sandhi:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>-as</th>
<th>-ās</th>
<th>-s</th>
<th>-r</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>o'</td>
<td>ā</td>
<td>r</td>
<td>r</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a</td>
<td>ā</td>
<td>r</td>
<td>r</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o</td>
<td>ā</td>
<td>r</td>
<td>r</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aś</td>
<td>āś</td>
<td>ś</td>
<td>ś</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aṣ</td>
<td>āṣ</td>
<td>ś</td>
<td>ś</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>as</td>
<td>āṣ</td>
<td>s</td>
<td>s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aḥ</td>
<td>āḥ</td>
<td>ḥ</td>
<td>ḥ</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To use this table, find the ending of the word on the top row. Then find the second sound in the right column. The corresponding cell in the table is the result. For example, if the first term ends in -ās and the next one starts with c or ch, then the result is -āś.

**Common changes**

Some changes are common and apply to all visarga sounds.

If the second sound is unvoiced, the visarga can become ś, ʂ, or s to match the second sound’s point of pronunciation. Here are some examples:

बाल: चरति → बाळश् चरति  
bālaḥ carati → bālas carati  
The boy walks.

बाल: टिप्पणीम् पठति → बालश् टिप्पणी पठति  
bālaḥ ṭippaniṃ paṭhati → bālas ṭippaniṃ paṭhati  
The boy reads the commentary.

बाल: तिष्ठति → बालस् तिष्ठति  
bālaḥ tिषṭhati → bālas tिषṭhati  
The boy stands.
These changes may even occur in front of śa, ṣa, and sa. But these changes are usually not written down:

नरः शिलां गच्छति (नरशिलां गच्छति)
naraḥ śilāṃ gacchati (naraśśilāṃ gacchati)
The man goes to the rock.

नरः षण्डां गच्छति (नरषण्डां गच्छति)
naraḥ ṣaṇḍaṃ gacchati (naraṣṣaṇḍaṃ gacchati)
The man goes to the thicket.

नरः सागरं गच्छति (नरसागरं गच्छति)
naraḥ sāgaraṃ gacchati (narassāgaraṃ gacchati)
The man goes to the ocean.

-ās sandhi

If the visarga ends a term that originally ended in -ās, then it disappears if any voiced sound follows:

नरः उदकं पिबन्ति → नरः उदकं पिबन्ति
narāḥ udakam pibanti → narā udakaṃ pibanti
The men drink water.

नरः मध्यं पिबन्ति → नरः मध्यं पिबन्ति
narāḥ madyam pibanti → narā madyaṃ pibanti
The men drink wine.

नरः वमन्ति → नरः वमन्ति।
narāḥ vamanti → narā vamanti.
The men vomit.

-as sandhi

If the visarga ends a term that originally ended in -as, then it becomes o if any voiced consonant follows:
नर: मद्यं पिवति \(\rightarrow\) नरो मद्यं पिवति
\[naraḥ \text{ madyāṃ pibati} \rightarrow naro \text{ madyāṃ pibati}\]
The man drinks wine.

And if the second sound is \(a\), then we replace all three sounds with \(o\):

नर: अमृतं पिवति \(\rightarrow\) नरो समृतं पिवति
\[naraḥ \text{ amṛtaṃ pibati} \rightarrow naro \text{ 'mṛtaṃ pibati}\]
The man drinks nectar.

The ' symbol, which is called the \textit{avagraha}, often shows that a vowel was removed due to sandhi.

Otherwise, the \textit{visarga} disappears before other vowels, just as we saw with -\(ās\) above:

नर: उदकम् पिवति \(\rightarrow\) नर उदके पिवति
\[naraḥ \text{ udakam pibati} \rightarrow nara \text{ udakaṃ pibati}\]
The man drinks water.

नर: ओदनम् इच्छति \(\rightarrow\) नर ओदने इच्छति
\[naraḥ \text{ odanam icchati} \rightarrow nara \text{ odanam icchati}\]
The man wants rice.

Other changes

Otherwise, the \textit{visarga} becomes \(r\) in front of any voiced sound:

अग्नि: अस्ति \(\rightarrow\) अग्निर् अस्ति
\[agniḥ \text{ asti} \rightarrow agnir \text{ asti}\]
There is a fire.

वायु: अस्ति \(\rightarrow\) वायुर् अस्ति
\[vāyuḥ \text{ asti} \rightarrow vāyur \text{ asti}\]
There is wind.
There is a door.

But if the second sound is r, the visarga disappears and the vowel before it becomes long:

The fire is pleasing.

The wind is pleasing.

The door is pleasing.

**sa and eṣa**

The words *saḥ* (“he,” “that one”) and *eṣaḥ* (“he,” “this”) are very common in Sanskrit. They have their own unique visarga changes. But thankfully, those changes are simple. In front of *a*, they behave as you would expect:

He thought.

He saw.

But in front of all other sounds, the visarga disappears:

He wants.


स: चिन्तयति → स चिन्तयति

saḥ cintayati → sa cintayati  
He thinks.

एष: पश्यति → एष पश्यति

eṣaḥ paśyati → eṣa paśyati  
He sees.

Review

You do not need to memorize the rules above. But if you would like to practice using them, you can try to apply the correct visarga sandhi changes to the examples below:

राम: गच्छति।

rāmaḥ gacchati.

नरा: गच्छन्ति।

narāḥ gacchanti.

नर: अश्वम पश्यति।

naraḥ aśvam paśyati.

स: रामं पश्यति।

saḥ rāmaṃ paśyati.

गुरु: अस्ति।

guruḥ asti.
Consonant sandhi between words

Also known as: vyañjana-sandhi, hal-sandhi

Consonant sandhi is the name for sandhi changes between a consonant and some other sound. Here is a simple example of consonant sandhi:

सीता वनम् गच्छति → सीता वनं गच्छति

sītā vanam gacchati → sītā vanam gacchati
Sita goes to the forest.

Consonant sandhi is complex. In this lesson, we will focus on the common sandhi changes that occur between two words. These changes also apply between the two words in a compound.

Reducing consonants

Sanskrit has many consonants. But Sanskrit words end only in specific consonant sounds. So we must first apply a few rules to make sure that our word ends in a valid consonant sound.

Before we study the specific rules, let's first see some examples of what these rules do. In the examples below, the words on the left don't follow the rules and are not valid words. After applying the rules, we get the correct results on the right:

अगच्छन्ति ज् → अगच्छन ज्
agacchant → agacchan
they went

वाच् → वाक्
vāc → vāk
speech

दिश् → दिक्
diś → dik
direction
Now, here are the changes that we should apply to words ending in consonants. First, a word is not usually allowed to end in multiple consonants. If a word does end in multiple consonants, we keep only the first of those consonants. You can see some examples of this below:

अगच्छन्ति → अगच्छन
they went

पश्यन्ति → पश्यन
to see

प्राच् → प्राच्
facing, opposite

Now, there are rare exceptions, usually if the second-to-last consonant is r:

ऊर्ज् → ऊर्ज्
strength, vigor (no change)

Second, consonants pronounced at the hard palate generally become k. (ṅ becomes ň.) A very small number of words, such as rāj, use ō instead:
Third, the remaining consonant becomes unaspirated and unvoiced if it has an unaspirated and unvoiced version. In the first example below, dh has an unvoiced and unaspirated version t, so it becomes t. In the second example, m has no unvoiced or unaspirated version, so it stays the same:

### समिध् → समित्

* samidh → samit  
  (sacred) wood, kindling

### वनम् → वनम्

* vanam → vanam  
  forest (no change)

Finally, -s and -r become the *visarga*:

### नरस् → नरः

* naras → naraḥ  
  man
Sanskrit words do not usually end in semivowels (ya ra la va). So by the end of this process, we are left with eight possible final sounds: $k$, $t$, $t$, $p$, $n$, $n$, $m$, and the visarga.

**Rules for $k$, $t$, $t$, and $p$**

$k$, $t$, $t$, and $p$ use the same voicing as the sound that follows them:

- $\text{तत् वनम्} \rightarrow \text{तद् वनम्}$  
  $\text{tat vanam} \rightarrow \text{tad vanam}$

- $\text{तत् उदकम्} \rightarrow \text{तद् उदकम्}$  
  $\text{tat udakam} \rightarrow \text{tad udakam}$

- $\text{तत् फलम्} \rightarrow \text{तत् फलम्}$  
  $\text{tat phalam} \rightarrow \text{tat phalam}$

They also become nasal when the sound that follows them is nasal:

- $\text{वाक् न} \rightarrow \text{वाङ् न}$  
  $\text{vāk na} \rightarrow \text{vāṅ na}$

- $\text{राट् न} \rightarrow \text{राण् न}$  
  $\text{rāṭ na} \rightarrow \text{rāṇ na}$

- $\text{तत् न} \rightarrow \text{तन् न}$  
  $\text{tat na} \rightarrow \text{tan na}$

- $\text{ककुप् न} \rightarrow \text{ककुम् न}$  
  $\text{kakup na} \rightarrow \text{kakum na}$

If the second sound is $h$, then we usually get this change:

- $\text{वाक् ह} \rightarrow \text{वाग् घ}$  
  $\text{vāk ha} \rightarrow \text{vāg gha}$
Some learners find it helpful to see these changes in a table:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>k</th>
<th>t</th>
<th>p</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>n</td>
<td>n</td>
<td>m</td>
<td>nasal sounds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>g*</td>
<td>d*</td>
<td>b*</td>
<td>h</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>g</td>
<td>d</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>other voiced sounds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>k</td>
<td>t</td>
<td>p</td>
<td>unvoiced sounds</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In the table above, * means that the following h shifts its point of pronunciation to match the first sound.

**Extra rules for -t**

-t changes frequently. If the next consonant is pronounced at the hard palate (like ca) or the roof of the mouth (like ta), -t changes to a sound with the same point of pronunciation:

- तत् चित्रम् → तच् चित्रम्
  tat citram → tac citram

- तत् जलम् → तज् जलम्
  tat jalam → taj jalam

If l is the second sound, it becomes l:
तत्त्वभस्व → तत्त्वभस्व
tat labhasva → tal labhasva
Obtain that.

And if the next sound is š, we get this change:

तत्त्वोहाओ → तत्त्व्योहाओ
tat śocanti → tac chocanti

As before, some learners find it helpful to see these changes in a table:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>t</th>
<th>n</th>
<th>c</th>
<th>j</th>
<th>t</th>
<th>d</th>
<th>l</th>
<th>c (ś becomes ch)</th>
<th>d (h becomes dh)</th>
<th>d</th>
<th>t</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>nasal sound</td>
<td>c, ch</td>
<td>j, jh</td>
<td>t, th</td>
<td>d, dh</td>
<td>l</td>
<td>ś</td>
<td>h</td>
<td></td>
<td>other voiced sounds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>other sounds</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Rules for -n

Like -t, -n changes often. If the next consonant is a voiced consonant at the hard palate (like ja) or the roof of the mouth (like na), -n changes to the nasal sound with the same point of pronunciation:

नरान्न ज्यामिन → नरान्ण्ण ज्यामिन
narān jayāmi → narāṇ jayāmi
If \( l \) is the second sound, it becomes a nasal \( l \):

\[
\text{तान् लभन्ते} \rightarrow \text{ताळ् लभन्ते}
\]

\[
\text{tān labhante} \rightarrow \text{tāl labhante}
\]

In front of \( c/ch, t/\text{th} \), or \( t/\text{th} \), \( n \) becomes \( \text{ṃś}, \text{ṃṣ}, \text{and ms} \) respectively:

\[
\text{तान् चरन्ति} \rightarrow \text{तांश् चरन्ति}
\]

\[
\text{tān caranti} \rightarrow \text{tāṃś caranti}
\]

\[
\text{तान् तरन्ति} \rightarrow \text{तांस् तरन्ति}
\]

\[
\text{tān taranti} \rightarrow \text{tāṃs taranti}
\]

And if the next sound is \( ś \), two different outcomes are possible:

\[
\text{तान् शचन्ति} \rightarrow \text{ताञ शचन्ति}
\]

\[
\text{tān śocanti} \rightarrow \text{tāñ śocanti}
\]

(option 1)

\[
\text{तान् शचन्ति} \rightarrow \text{ताञ छचन्ति}
\]

\[
\text{tān śocanti} \rightarrow \text{tāñ cho canti}
\]

(option 2)

Again, some learners find it helpful to see these changes in a table:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>( n )</th>
<th>( mś )</th>
<th>( c, ch )</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>( ķ )</td>
<td>( ķ )</td>
<td>( j, jh )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( ṇś )</td>
<td>( ṇś )</td>
<td>( t, th )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( n )</td>
<td>( ķd, ṇdh )</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( ṇś )</td>
<td>( t, th )</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nasal ( l )</td>
<td>( l )</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( ķ (ś optionally becomes ch) )</td>
<td>( ś )</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( n )</td>
<td>( other sounds )</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Whyṃs?

Are you surprised that -n might become -ṃs? This strange change has a reasonable explanation. Many of the Sanskrit words that end in -n originally ended in -ns. After we reduce consonants, only -n remains. But if certain unvoiced sounds follow, we keep that -s sound. Then the -s changes according to normal sandhi rules.

Rules for -m

-m becomes the anusvāra when consonants follow:

सीतावन्मगच्छति → सीतावनंगच्छति
sitā vanam gacchati → sitā vanamḥ gacchati

And it may optionally become the nasal sound that matches the following consonant:

फलमचरामि → फलञचरामि
phalam carāmi → phalan carāmi

फलमखादामि → फलञखादामि
phalam khādāmi → phalan khādāmi

In modern times, this change is usually not written down. But, it is often used in spoken Sanskrit.

Rules for the visarga

We learned about visarga sandhi already. Please see the previous lesson for details.

Review

There are many small details to consonant sandhi. But this lesson is a complete summary of its most common patterns.
Consonant sandhi within a word

In the previous lesson, we learned that consonant sandhi can occur between two different words:

\[
तत्‌ इच्छामि → तदु इच्छामि।
\]
\[
tat icchāmi → tad icchāmi.
\]
I want that.

Consonant sandhi also occurs within a single word:

\[
मर्तु + भि: → मरुद्भि: \\
marut + bhiḥ → marudbhiḥ
\]
by the winds

Consonant sandhi within a word is complex and complicated. In this lesson, we will explain some of its general patterns.

**General changes**

If the second sound is a vowel, nasal sound, or semivowel, there are usually no sandhi changes:

\[
वच + अन्ति → वचन्ति \\
vac + anti → vacanti
\]

\[
वच + मि → वच्मि \\
vac + mi → vacmi
\]

\[
वाच + य → वाच्य \\
vāc + ya → vācyā
\]

Otherwise, consonant sandhi within a word generally the same principles we learned about in the previous lesson.

**Preserving aspirated sounds**

One important difference is that we should preserve aspirated sounds if possible. This idea is difficult to explain, but it is easy to understand:
बुध + त → बुध
\textit{budh} + \textit{ta} → \textit{buddha}  
(aspiration moves to \textit{ta})

रम्भ + त → रम्भ
\textit{labh} + \textit{ta} → \textit{labdha}  
(aspiration moves to \textit{ta})

बोध + स्य → भोत्स्य
\textit{bodh} + \textit{sya} → \textit{bhotsya}  
(aspiration moves to the first consonant)

दह + स्य → धक्ष्य
\textit{dah} + \textit{sya} → \textit{dhakṣya}

दह → धक
dah → dhak  
burning  
(aspiration moves to the first consonant)

But sometimes, there is no sound we can move the aspiration to. In these instances, we remove the aspiration completely:

मुह → मोक्ष्यति
\textit{muh} → \textit{mokṣyati}  
be deluded → will be deluded

मुह → मुक्क
\textit{muh} → \textit{muk}  
deluding  
(\textit{m} stays the same.)

\textit{n} → \textit{n}

In Sanskrit, \textit{n} often shifts its point of pronunciation and becomes \textit{n}: 
Generally, the sounds \( r \) and \( s \) change \( n \) to \( ṇ \). This change can occur even if the two sounds are separated by other sounds:

\[
\begin{align*}
गुरुना \rightarrow गुरुणा & \quad gurunā \rightarrow guruṇā \\
विषेन \rightarrow विषेण & \quad viṣena \rightarrow viṣeṇa \\
रामेन \rightarrow रामेण & \quad rāmena \rightarrow rāmeṇa \\
रामायण \rightarrow रामायण & \quad rāmāyana \rightarrow rāmāyaṇa \\
वर्षभोग्येन \rightarrow वर्षभोग्येन & \quad varṣabhogyena \rightarrow varṣabhogyena \\
\end{align*}
\]

Which sounds can come in between? Generally, any sound that we can pronounce without moving our tongue very much can come in between. These sounds include:

- all vowels
- \( y \) and \( v \)
- consonants pronounced with the soft palate (\( k \) \( kh \) \( g \) \( gh \) \( ṇ \) \( h \))
- consonants pronounced with the lips (\( p \) \( ph \) \( b \) \( bh \) \( m \))

There are many exceptions and subtleties to this rule. For now, just remember that \( n \) often changes to \( ṇ \) if it follows \( r \) or \( s \).

\( s \rightarrow ṣ \)

Likewise, \( s \) often shifts and becomes \( ṣ \):

\[
\begin{align*}
अग्नि + सु \rightarrow अग्निषु & \quad agni + su \rightarrow agniṣu \\
\end{align*}
\]
Generally, any vowel other than \(a\) or \(ā\) changes the following \(s\) to \(ṣ\). The consonant \(k\) can cause this change too:

\[
\text{वाक् + सु} \rightarrow \text{वाक्षु}
\]

\(vāk + su \rightarrow vākṣu\)

In English, this change is sometimes called the **ruki rule** because it is caused by “\(r\)” sounds (\(ṛ ṭ\)), “\(u\)” sounds (\(u ū o au\)), “\(k\)” sounds (\(k\)), and “\(i\)” sounds (\(i ī e ai\)).

There are many exceptions and subtleties to this rule. For now, just remember that \(s\) often changes to \(ṣ\) if it follows “ruki” sounds.
Nominals 1: Normal stems
The nominal system

Nominals are “naming” words. Along with verbs and uninflected words, they are one of the three main types of Sanskrit word. We use the word nominal so that we can refer to many different types of words at once. These types include nouns, adjectives, pronouns, and numerals.

In this lesson, we'll learn about the basic parts of a nominal word. We'll also learn what kinds of meanings the different nominal endings can express.

Stems and endings

Every nominal word has two parts: a stem and an ending. In the examples below, we combine a stem with its ending to create a complete word:

सिंह + ṣ → सिंहः

siṃha + ṣ → siṃhah

the lion

सिंह + स्य → सिंहस्य

siṃha + sya → siṃhasya

of the lion

सिंह + ऐः → सिंहेः

siṃha + aih → simhaih

by the lions

The stem contains the nominal's basic meaning. And the ending expresses three basic kinds of information: gender, number, and case.

The three genders

In the core lessons, we learned that Sanskrit nominals use three different genders. These are the masculine gender:

सिंहो गच्छति

siṃho gacchati

The (male) lion goes.
the **feminine** gender:

śिहा गच्छति

*śīhā gacchati*

The (female) lion goes.

and the **neuter** gender:

वनम् अस्ति

*vanaṁ asti*

There is a forest.

Many nominal stems can freely use any of these three genders. But noun stems generally use a fixed gender. Noun stems use a fixed gender even if they don't refer to living beings:

योग

*yoga*

yoga (masculine)

नीति

*nīti*

wise conduct (feminine)

निर्वाण

*nirvāṇa*

nirvana (neuter)

How do we determine which gender a noun should use? We can usually determine a noun's gender by noticing the sounds at the end of a stem. Here are some basic rules that might be helpful:

- Nouns ending in `-a` are never feminine.
- Nouns ending in `-ā`, `-ī`, and `-ū` are almost always feminine.
- Nouns made with the `-tra` and `-ana` suffixes are usually neuter.
The three numbers

In the core lessons, we saw that Sanskrit nominals use three different numbers (vacana). These are the singular, which is used for one item:

सिंहः पश्यति।

\(\textit{siṁhaḥ paśyati}.\)

The lion sees.

the dual, which is used for exactly two items:

सिंहाँ पश्यतः।

\(\textit{siṁhau paśyataḥ}.\)

The two lions see.

and the plural, which is used for three or more items:

सिंहाः पश्यन्ति।

\(\textit{siṁhāḥ paśyanti}.\)

The (many) lions see.

Verbs also use all three of these numbers. In a Sanskrit sentence, the verb and the case 1 noun should have the same number.

The eight cases

Case, roughly speaking, is the name for the way that Sanskrit nominals express different roles in a sentence. Sanskrit uses eight different cases.

Case 1 can be thought of as the default case. Usually, it refers to the subject of the action:

सिंहः खादति।

\(\textit{siṁhaḥ khādati}.\)

The lion eats.

But this depends on the prayoga of the verb. For example, consider the two sentences below. Both use \(\textit{siṁhaḥ}\) in case 1. But the meaning of \(\textit{siṁhaḥ}\) in each sentence is very different:
The lion eats.

(kartari prayoga. The lion is the subject (kartā) of the sentence.)

The lion is eaten.

(karmanī prayoga. The lion is the object (karma) of the sentence.)

Case 2 is generally the object of the action. It is also used for destinations:

The lion sees a village.

The lion goes to the village.

Case 3 generally means “with” or “by means of”:

The lion goes to the village by means of the road.

Case 4 generally means “for” or “for the sake of”:

The lion goes to the village for meat.

The lion goes to the village for eating (“to eat”).

Case 5 generally means “from,” “than,” or “because of”: 
नरः बनादु ग्रामं गच्छति।
narah vanād grāmaṃ gacchati.
A man goes from the forest to the village.

सिंहो नरादु बलवत्तरः।
simho narād balavattaraḥ.
The lion is stronger than the man.

नरः भयादु गृहं गच्छति।
narah bhayād gṛhaṃ gacchati.
The man goes home from (because of) fear.

Case 6 generally means “of”:

सिंहो नरस्य गृहं गच्छति।
simho narasya gṛhaṃ gacchati.
The lion goes to the house of the man (or, the man's house).

सिंहो नरस्य मांसं खादति।
simho narasya māṃsaṃ khādati.
The lion eats the meat of the man.

Case 7 generally means “in” or “on”:

नस्य सिंहे द्वित।
narasya simhe dviti.
The man is in the lion.

सिंहो ग्रामेचारति।
simho grāme carati.
The lion walks in the village.

And case 8 is the person being spoken to:

हे सिंह बनं गच्छ।
he simha vanāṃ gaccha.
Hey lion! Go to the forest.
Here is what these cases are called in other resources:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Our name</th>
<th>Sanskrit name</th>
<th>English name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Case 1</td>
<td>prathamā (“first”)</td>
<td>nominative case</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case 2</td>
<td>dvitīyā (“second”)</td>
<td>accusative case</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case 3</td>
<td>tṛtīyā (“third”)</td>
<td>instrumental case</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case 4</td>
<td>caturthī (“fourth”)</td>
<td>dative case</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case 5</td>
<td>pañcamī (“fifth”)</td>
<td>ablative case</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case 6</td>
<td>śaṣṭhī (“sixth”)</td>
<td>genitive case</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case 7</td>
<td>saptamī (“seventh”)</td>
<td>locative case</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case 8</td>
<td>(no special name)</td>
<td>vocative case</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Why doesn’t case 8 have a special name in Sanskrit? This is a very deep question! For details, see our vyākaraṇa-praveśah series.

**Stem families**

Nominal stems can end with many different kinds of sounds:

- **सिंह**
  - *sinha*
  - (male) lion

- **अग्नि**
  - *agni*
  - fire

- **मनस्**
  - *manas*
  - mind

We can group these stems based on the last sound they use. So we can talk about -a stems (stems ending in a), -ē stems, -ū stems, and so on. We use this grouping because stems with different final sounds tend to use different endings.
For example, compare the endings we use for *siṃha* (which ends in a short -a) to the endings we use for *siṃhā* (which ends in a long -ā):

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{सिंह} & \rightarrow \text{सिंहेन} \\
\text{siṃha} & \rightarrow \text{siṃhena} \\
& \text{(male) lion} \rightarrow \text{by the (male) lion}
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{सिंहा} & \rightarrow \text{सिंहया} \\
\text{siṃhā} & \rightarrow \text{siṃhayā} \\
& \text{(female) lion} \rightarrow \text{by the (female) lion}
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{सिंह} & \rightarrow \text{सिंहस्य} \\
\text{siṃha} & \rightarrow \text{siṃhasya} \\
& \text{(male) lion} \rightarrow \text{of the (male) lion}
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{सिंहाया} : \\
\text{siṃhā} & \rightarrow \text{siṃhāyāh} \\
& \text{(female) lion} \rightarrow \text{of the (female) lion}
\end{align*}
\]

Roughly, we can combine all of these stem groups into five big **stem families**. All of the stems in a stem family tend to use similar endings. These families are:

- the -a stems
- the -ā, -i, and -ū stems
- the -i and -u stems
- the -ṛ stems
- all other stems

Stem families may have some small differences, but they generally share most of their endings and follow consistent patterns.

**Review**

In this lesson, we learned that nominals have two parts: a **stem** and an **ending**. We also learned that nominal endings can express the following information:

- three different **genders**
Finally, we learned about different stem families. Each stem family uses slightly different endings.

In the next lesson, we will learn about the basic nominal endings. These endings are common to all stem families, so they are important to know. But before you continue, here are some questions for review:

1. What are the three genders and the three numbers?
2. Give the basic meanings of each of the eight cases.
Basic nominal endings

In the previous lesson, we learned that we can sort nominal stems into different families based on their last sound. Different stem families might use different endings. For example, compare the endings we use with agni (“fire”) and manas (“mind”) below:

अग्नि → अग्निना
agni → agninā
with the fire

मनस् → मनसा
manas → manasā
with the mind

Here, we can see that agni uses the ending -nā and manas uses the ending -ā. But even though these endings are different, they both end with a long -ā sound.

All stem families tend to use a set of basic endings. Different stem families will modify these basic endings in different ways. But if we know these basic endings, we can more easily understand the system as a whole.

In this lesson, we will learn about the basic endings that Sanskrit nominals tend to use.

Basic masculine and feminine endings

Here are the basic nominal endings we use for the masculine and feminine genders. These endings are the same for both genders:
### Table of Dual Plural Endings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Dual</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>ṃ: h</td>
<td>ṛ: au</td>
<td>ṛ: aḥ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>ṛ: am</td>
<td>ṛ: au</td>
<td>ṛ: aḥ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>ṛ: ā</td>
<td>ṛ: bhyām</td>
<td>ṛ: bhiḥ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>ṛ: e</td>
<td>ṛ: bhyām</td>
<td>ṛ: bhyāḥ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>ṛ: aḥ</td>
<td>ṛ: bhyām</td>
<td>ṛ: bhyāḥ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>ṛ: aḥ</td>
<td>ṛ: oḥ</td>
<td>ṛ: ām</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>ṛ: i</td>
<td>ṛ: oḥ</td>
<td>ṛ: su</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>ṛ: h</td>
<td>ṛ: au</td>
<td>ṛ: aḥ</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The table above has eight rows and three columns. Each row corresponds to a different case, and each column corresponds to a different number. For example, we can use this table to learn that the “case 7 singular” ending is ṛ: i.

Why do we put these endings in a table? Is it so that we can sit down and memorize these endings? No! In our view, that is a waste of time.

We use tables because they sometimes help us see certain patterns clearly. Specifically, notice that many of these endings are the same. For example, the same ending bhyām has three different meanings:
The man goes to the city by means of the two elephants.

The man goes to the city for the two elephants.

The man goes from the two elephants to the city.

How do we decide what bhyām means here? We can decide what bhyām means only if we know the sentence's context. If we don't have that context, we must guess.

### Basic neuter endings

The basic neuter endings follow an interesting pattern. In cases 3 to 7, they are identical to the endings we saw above. But in cases 1, 2, and 8, they are as you see below:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Dual</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>i</td>
<td>i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>i</td>
<td>i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>i</td>
<td>i</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The “—” symbol means that no ending is used. More importantly, notice that all three of these cases use identical endings. This is the usual pattern for neuter endings.
Two examples

Let's study two examples of how to use these endings. We will study the feminine stem *nau*, which means “boat,” and the neuter stem *manas*, which means “mind.”

When we add endings to the stem *nau*, a few small sandhi changes apply if the ending starts with a vowel. Otherwise, *nau* is normal and predictable:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Dual</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>नौः</td>
<td>नावो</td>
<td>नावः</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>nauḥ</td>
<td>nāvau</td>
<td>nāvaḥ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>नावम्</td>
<td>नावो</td>
<td>नावः</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>nāvam</td>
<td>nāvau</td>
<td>nāvaḥ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>नावा</td>
<td>नौभ्याम्</td>
<td>नौभिः</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>nāvā</td>
<td>naubhyām</td>
<td>naubhiḥ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>नावेष्</td>
<td>नौभ्याम्</td>
<td>नौभ्यः</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>nāve</td>
<td>naubhyām</td>
<td>naubhyah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>नावः</td>
<td>नौभ्याम्</td>
<td>नौभ्यः</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>nāvaḥ</td>
<td>naubhyām</td>
<td>naubhyah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>नावः</td>
<td>नौभ्याम्</td>
<td>नौभ्यः</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>nāvaḥ</td>
<td>naubhyām</td>
<td>naubhyah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>नावि</td>
<td>नावोः</td>
<td>नावाम्</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>nāvi</td>
<td>nāvoh</td>
<td>nāvām</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>नौः</td>
<td>नावो</td>
<td>नावः</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>nauḥ</td>
<td>nāvau</td>
<td>nāvaḥ</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Notice that _nausu_ becomes _naushman_ due to sandhi. _s_ usually becomes ś when it follows a vowel other than a or ā.

Meanwhile, _manas_ is a neuter stem and uses neuter endings. As before, a few small sandhi changes will apply. But otherwise, _manas_ follows a regular pattern:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Dual</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Case 1</td>
<td>मनः</td>
<td>मनसि</td>
<td>मनांसि</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>manah</td>
<td>manasi</td>
<td>manamsi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case 2</td>
<td>मनः</td>
<td>मनसि</td>
<td>मनांसि</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>manah</td>
<td>manasi</td>
<td>manamsi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case 3</td>
<td>मनसा</td>
<td>मनोभ्याम्</td>
<td>मनोभिः</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>manasa</td>
<td>manobhyaṃ</td>
<td>manobhiḥ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case 4</td>
<td>मनसे</td>
<td>मनोभ्याम्</td>
<td>मनोभ्यः</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>manase</td>
<td>manobhyaṃ</td>
<td>manobhyaḥ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case 5</td>
<td>मनसा</td>
<td>मनोभ्याम्</td>
<td>मनोभ्यः</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>manasaḥ</td>
<td>manobhyaṃ</td>
<td>manobhyaḥ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case 6</td>
<td>मनसा</td>
<td>मनसोः</td>
<td>मनसाम्</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>manasaḥ</td>
<td>manasoḥ</td>
<td>manasām</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case 7</td>
<td>मनसि</td>
<td>मनसोः</td>
<td>मनःसु</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>manasi</td>
<td>manasoḥ</td>
<td>manahsu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case 8</td>
<td>मनः</td>
<td>मनसि</td>
<td>मनांसि</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>manah</td>
<td>manasi</td>
<td>manamsi</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The _s_ in _manas_ becomes the _visarga_ if it is at the end of a word or if the ending starts with a consonant. _manah_ (with its _visarga_) then follows the normal rules of _visarga_ sandhi:
मनस् → मन्:

\( \text{manas} \rightarrow \text{manaḥ} \)

मनस् + भ्याम् → मनस् + भ्याम् → मनोभ्याम्

\( \text{manas} + \text{bhyām} \rightarrow \text{manas} + \text{bhyām} \rightarrow \text{manobhyām} \)

Notice that the word manāṃsi has a small stem change. The stem’s last vowel becomes longer, and we insert an anusvāra as well:

मन्: → मनांसि

\( \text{manaḥ} \rightarrow \text{manāṃsi} \)

minds

Neuter stems often change in this way. We will see many examples of this change in the following lessons.

**Review**

In this lesson, we learned about the basic nominal endings. We also studied two examples that use these endings: the feminine stem nau and the neuter stem manas. Finally, we learned that different stem families modify these basic endings in different ways.

In the following lessons, we will learn how each stem family modifies these basic endings.

1. Why is it useful to know the basic nominal endings?
2. If we see a nominal ending that has multiple possible meanings, how do we decide which meaning is intended?
3. In the neuter gender, there are three cases that have identical endings. What are these three cases?
-a stems

In the previous lesson, we learned about the basic endings that nominal stems use. Different stem families will change these endings in small ways.

Of all of the stem families, the one that changes them the most is the family of -a stems (akārantāni, “ending in -a”). Stems in this family are either masculine or neuter.

Most of Sanskrit's nominal stems end in the vowel -a, so it's important to know this family well. Does that mean you should memorize these endings? No. Just focus on their general patterns.

Masculine endings

First, let's study the 24 masculine endings for the -a stem. Let's use the masculine noun stem gaja, which means “elephant”: 
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case 1</th>
<th>गजः:</th>
<th>गजौ</th>
<th>गजाः:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>gajaḥ</td>
<td>gajau</td>
<td>gajāḥ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case 2</td>
<td>गजम्</td>
<td>गजौ</td>
<td>गजान्</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gajam</td>
<td>gajau</td>
<td>gajān</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case 3</td>
<td>गजेन</td>
<td>गजाभ्याम्</td>
<td>गजैः</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gajena</td>
<td>gajābhyām</td>
<td>gajaiḥ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case 4</td>
<td>गजाय</td>
<td>गजाभ्याम्</td>
<td>गजेभ्यः</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gajāya</td>
<td>gajābhyām</td>
<td>gajebhyaḥ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case 5</td>
<td>गजात्</td>
<td>गजाभ्याम्</td>
<td>गजेभ्यः</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gajāt</td>
<td>gajābhyām</td>
<td>gajebhyaḥ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case 6</td>
<td>गजस्य</td>
<td>गजयोः</td>
<td>गजानाम्</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gajasya</td>
<td>gajayoh</td>
<td>gajānām</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case 7</td>
<td>गजे</td>
<td>गजयोः</td>
<td>गजेषु</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gaje</td>
<td>gajayoh</td>
<td>gajeṣu</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case 8</td>
<td>गज</td>
<td>गजौ</td>
<td>गजाः</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gaja</td>
<td>gajau</td>
<td>gajāḥ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In the singular, the endings we use are very different from the basic nominal endings. Here is a comparison:

मनसा → गजेन
manasā → gajena

मनसे → गजाय
manase → gajāya
नसष्णः
→
गना ज्

manasaḥ → gajāt

मनस्स: गजस्य
→

manasaḥ → gajasya

Thankfully, the endings in the dual and plural are mostly similar to the basic endings.

**Neuter endings**

In the previous lesson, we learned that neuter endings and masculine endings are usually very similar. For the -a stems, the endings differ only in cases 1, 2, and 8.

Here is the neuter noun *phala* in cases 1, 2, and 8. In all other cases, *phala* uses the same endings as *gaja*:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Dual</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>फलम्</td>
<td>फले</td>
<td>फलानि</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>phalam</td>
<td>phale</td>
<td>phalāni</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>फलम्</td>
<td>फले</td>
<td>फलानि</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>phalam</td>
<td>phale</td>
<td>phalāni</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>फलः</td>
<td>फले</td>
<td>फलानि</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>phala</td>
<td>phale</td>
<td>phalāni</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

These words follow the basic pattern we learned about in the previous lesson. Specifically, notice that the dual forms follow normal sandhi rules:

\[
\text{फल} + ई \rightarrow \text{फले}
\]

\[
\text{phala} + t \rightarrow \text{phale}
\]

And that the word *phalāni* lengthens its vowel and uses an extra nasal sound, just as we saw with *manāṃsi*:
नस + इ → मनांसि
$manas + i \rightarrow manāṃsi$

फल + इ → फलानि
$phala + i \rightarrow phalāni$

However, one small change is that the singular of cases 1 and 2 uses the ending -\textit{m}:

फल + म → फलम्
$phala + m \rightarrow phalam$

**Sandhi changes**

Some of the noun endings above use the consonant sound \textit{n}. If \textit{n} is not at the end of a word, it might change due to a complex sandhi rule:

ग्रामेन → ग्रामेण
$grāmena \rightarrow grāmeṇa$
with the village

विषेन → विषेण
$viṣena \rightarrow viṣeṇa$
with poison

Roughly, the rule is that the letters \textit{r} and \textit{s} causes \textit{n} to change to \textit{ṇ}. This change can occur even if the two sounds are separated by vowels, “lip” consonants like \textit{p} and \textit{m}, and a few others.

**Review**

\textit{a} is the most common vowel in Sanskrit, and the -\textit{a} stems are the most common stem family. In the next few lessons, we’ll learn about the other stem families.

1. Many of the endings used by the -\textit{a} stem have multiple meanings. Give an example of one of these endings. What meanings can it express?
2. In the -\textit{a} family, masculine and neuter endings are often identical. Which five cases are identical for both genders?
-ā, -ī, and -ū stems

In the previous lesson, we learned about the -a stems, which use masculine and neuter endings. In this lesson, we'll learn about three very similar stems:

- The -ā stems (ākārantāni, “ending in -ā”)
- The -ī stems (īkārantāni, “ending in -ī”)
- The -ū stems (ūkārantāni, “ending in -ū”)

Stems that end with these sounds are almost always feminine. In particular, the -ā and -ī endings are often used as the feminine versions of stems that end in -a:

- ग (gaja) → ग (gajā)  
  (male) elephant → (female) elephant

- मृग (mṛga) → मृग (mṛgī)  
  (male) deer → (female) deer

Basic -ā stems

In the previous lesson, we used the masculine stem gaja, which means “(male) elephant,” to demonstrate the -a stem. Here, we will use the stem gajā, which means “(female) elephant,” so that the differences are clear.

As before, notice that the words in the singular use endings that are different from the others we’ve seen. But the words in the dual and plural mostly use endings that we’ve seen before:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case 1</th>
<th>गजा</th>
<th>गजे</th>
<th>गजाः</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>gajā</td>
<td>gaje</td>
<td>gajāḥ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case 2</td>
<td>गजाम्</td>
<td>गजे</td>
<td>गजाः</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gajām</td>
<td>gaje</td>
<td>gajāḥ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case 3</td>
<td>गजया</td>
<td>गजाभ्याम्</td>
<td>गजाभिः</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gajayā</td>
<td>gajābhyaṁ</td>
<td>gajābhīḥ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case 4</td>
<td>गजाये</td>
<td>गजाभ्याम्</td>
<td>गजाभ्यः</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gajāyai</td>
<td>gajābhyaṁ</td>
<td>gajābhyaḥ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case 5</td>
<td>गजायाः</td>
<td>गजाभ्याम्</td>
<td>गजाभ्यः</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gajāyāḥ</td>
<td>gajābhyaṁ</td>
<td>gajābhyaḥ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case 6</td>
<td>गजायाः</td>
<td>गजयोः</td>
<td>गजानाम्</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gajāyāḥ</td>
<td>gajayoḥ</td>
<td>gajānām</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case 7</td>
<td>गजायाम्</td>
<td>गजयोः</td>
<td>गजासु</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gajāyām</td>
<td>gajayoḥ</td>
<td>gajāsu</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case 8</td>
<td>गजे</td>
<td>गजे</td>
<td>गजाः</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gaje</td>
<td>gaje</td>
<td>gajāḥ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Basic -ī stems**

The -ī and -ū stems are similar to the -ā stems. But they have some small differences in the singular. In the table below, we use the feminine stem nadī, which means “river”:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case 1</th>
<th>नदी</th>
<th>नद्याओ</th>
<th>नदयाहः</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>nadī</td>
<td>nadyāo</td>
<td>nadyaḥ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case 2</td>
<td>नदीम्</td>
<td>नद्याओ</td>
<td>नदीः</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>nadīm</td>
<td>nadyāo</td>
<td>nadiḥ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case 3</td>
<td>नद्या</td>
<td>नदीभ्याम्</td>
<td>नदीभीः</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>nadyā</td>
<td>nadibhyām</td>
<td>nadibhiḥ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case 4</td>
<td>नद्याइ</td>
<td>नदीभ्याम्</td>
<td>नदीभ्यः</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>nadyāi</td>
<td>nadibhyām</td>
<td>nadibhyah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case 5</td>
<td>नद्याः</td>
<td>नदीभ्याम्</td>
<td>नदीभ्यः</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>nadyāḥ</td>
<td>nadibhyām</td>
<td>nadibhyah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case 6</td>
<td>नद्याः</td>
<td>नद्योः</td>
<td>नदीनाम्</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>nadyāḥ</td>
<td>nadyoḥ</td>
<td>nadinām</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case 7</td>
<td>नद्याम्</td>
<td>नद्योः</td>
<td>नदीषु</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>nadyām</td>
<td>nadyoḥ</td>
<td>nadīsu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case 8</td>
<td>नदि</td>
<td>नद्याओ</td>
<td>नदयाः</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>nadi</td>
<td>nadyāo</td>
<td>nadyaḥ</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The main difference is that the -ā stems frequently insert y between the stem and the ending:

गजया → नदया
gajayā → nadyā
gजायः → नद्याइ
gajāyai → nadyai
Basic -ू stems

The -ू stems follow the exact same pattern as the -ी stems. Where -ी becomes -y and -i, -ू becomes -v and -u. The only meaningful difference is that the case 1 singular has an extra visarga:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Dual</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>चमूः</td>
<td>चम्वः</td>
<td>चम्वः</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>camūḥ</td>
<td>camvau</td>
<td>camvaḥ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>चमूम्</td>
<td>चम्वः</td>
<td>चमूः</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>camūm</td>
<td>camvau</td>
<td>camūḥ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>चम्वः</td>
<td>चमूऽयाम्</td>
<td>चमूऽभिः</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>camvā</td>
<td>camūbhyām</td>
<td>camūbhiḥ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>चम्वः</td>
<td>चमूऽयाम्</td>
<td>चमूऽभिः</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>camvai</td>
<td>camūbhyām</td>
<td>camūbhyāḥ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>चम्वः</td>
<td>चमूऽयाम्</td>
<td>चमूऽभिः</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>camvāḥ</td>
<td>camūbhyām</td>
<td>camūbhyāḥ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>चम्वः</td>
<td>चम्वः</td>
<td>चमूऽनाम्</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>camvāḥ</td>
<td>camvoḥ</td>
<td>camūnām</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>चम्वऽम्</td>
<td>चम्वः</td>
<td>चमूऽषु</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>camvām</td>
<td>camvoḥ</td>
<td>camūṣu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>चमूः</td>
<td>चम्वः</td>
<td>चम्वः</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>camu</td>
<td>camvau</td>
<td>camvaḥ</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Review**

1. When a masculine -a stem becomes feminine, which stem endings does it usually use?

2. The -ā stems use a *visarga* in the case 1 singular. Do we use a *visarga* in the case 1 singular of the -ā stems? What about the -i stems?
-i and -u stems

So far, we have learned about two different stem families. The first, which is the family of -a stems, contains masculine and neuter stems. The second, which is the family of -ā, -ī, and -ū stems, mostly contains feminine stems.

Now we will learn about the family of -i and -u stems. These stems can be masculine, feminine, or neuter. That is, they can appear in any of the three genders.

Basic -i stems

In the examples below, we will use the adjective stem śuci, which means “shining,” “clear,” or “pure.”

First, here is the pattern for masculine stems:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Dual</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>शुचि: । । śuciḥ</td>
<td>शुची । । śucī</td>
<td>शुचयः । । śucayah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>शुचिम्     । । śucim</td>
<td>शुची । । śucī</td>
<td>शुचीन् । । śucīn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>शुचिना । । śucina</td>
<td>शुचिभ्याम् । । śucibhyām</td>
<td>शुचिभि: । । śucibhiḥ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>शुचये । । śucaye</td>
<td>शुचिभ्याम् । । śucibhyām</td>
<td>शुचिभ्य: । । śucibhyaḥ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>शुचे: । । śuceḥ</td>
<td>शुचिभ्याम् । । śucibhyām</td>
<td>शुचिभ्य: । । śucibhyaḥ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>शुचे: । । śuceḥ</td>
<td>शुचियो: । । śucyoh</td>
<td>शुचीनाम् । । śucinām</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>शुचौ । । śucau</td>
<td>शुचियो: । । śucyoh</td>
<td>शुचिषु । । śucīṣu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>शुचे । । śuce</td>
<td>शुची । । śucī</td>
<td>शुचयः । । śucayah</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The endings here are mostly similar to the basic nominal endings. But there are some important differences. For the singular forms, notice that cases 3 and 4 show slight changes. Case 3 has an extra *n* sound, and in case 4 the *i* of *śuci* strengthens to *śuce*, which then combines by normal sandhi rules:

शुचिना शुचये
śucina śucaye
(śuci, singular, in cases 3 and 4)
ननावना ननावते
nāvā nāve
(nau, singular, in cases 3 and 4)

In cases 5 through 8, we have various differences with no clear pattern:

शुचे: शुचे: शुची शुचे
śuceḥ śuceḥ śucī śuce
(śuci, singular, in cases 5 through 8)

ननावे: ननावे: ननवि नने:
nāvah nāvah nāvi nauḥ
(nau, singular, in cases 5 through 8)

For the dual forms, notice the long ī in śucī. And for the plural forms, notice that cases 2 and 6 resemble the -a stems:

शुचीन् शुचीनाम्
śucīn śucīnām
(śuci, plural, in cases 2 and 6)

गजान् गजानाम्
gajān gajānām
(gaja, plural, in cases 2 and 6)

Feminine stems follow a pattern similar to the masculine stems. But in cases 4 through 7, they can optionally behave as if they end with -ī:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Dual</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>śuciḥ</td>
<td>śucī</td>
<td>śucayaḥ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>śucim</td>
<td>śucī</td>
<td>śucīḥ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>śucinā</td>
<td>śucibhyām</td>
<td>śucibhiḥ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>śucaye, śucyai</td>
<td>śucibhyām</td>
<td>śucibhyah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>śuceh, śucyāh</td>
<td>śucibhyām</td>
<td>śucibhyah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>śuceh, śucyāh</td>
<td>śucyoh</td>
<td>śucinām</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>śucau, śucyām</td>
<td>śucyoh</td>
<td>śucisu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>śuce</td>
<td>śucī</td>
<td>śucayaḥ</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note that the case 2 feminine plural is śucīḥ as opposed to the masculine śucīn.

The neuter stem uses the basic nominal endings. But if an ending starts with a vowel, we add an extra n sound. We also use -īnām with a long -ī, just as we did above:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Dual</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>शयुचि  (śuci)</td>
<td>शयुचिनी  (śucini)</td>
<td>शयुचिनि  (śucīni)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>शयुचि  (śuci)</td>
<td>शयुचिनी  (śucini)</td>
<td>शयुचिनि  (śucīni)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>शयुचिना  (śucinā)</td>
<td>शयुचिभ्याम्  (śucibhyām)</td>
<td>शयुचिभि:  (śucibhiḥ)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>शयुचिने  (śucine)</td>
<td>शयुचिभ्याम्  (śucibhyām)</td>
<td>शयुचिभ्यः  (śucibhyāḥ)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>शयुचिन:  (śucinaḥ)</td>
<td>शयुचिभ्याम्  (śucibhyām)</td>
<td>शयुचिभ्यः  (śucibhyāḥ)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>शयुचिन:  (śucinaḥ)</td>
<td>शयुचिनो:  (śucinoḥ)</td>
<td>शयुचिनाम्  (śucinām)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>शयुचिनि  (śucini)</td>
<td>शयुचिनो:  (śucinoḥ)</td>
<td>शयुचिणु  (śucīṣu)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>शयुचि  (śuci)</td>
<td>शयुचिनी  (śucini)</td>
<td>शयुचिनि  (śucīni)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Again, notice that the neuter stem uses a long vowel with an extra nasal sound:

- मनस् + इ → मनाँसि  
  *manas + i → manāmsi*

- फल + इ → फलानि  
  *phala + i → phalāni*

- शुचि + इ → शुचिनि  
  *śuci + i → śucīni*
Basic -u stems

In the examples below, we will use the adjective stem *madhu*, which means “sweet.” If used in the neuter gender, it can also mean “honey.”

The masculine endings follow the same pattern as the -i endings we saw above. Where -i becomes y or ay or e, -u becomes v or av or o:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case 1</th>
<th>Case 2</th>
<th>Case 3</th>
<th>Case 4</th>
<th>Case 5</th>
<th>Case 6</th>
<th>Case 7</th>
<th>Case 8</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Singular</td>
<td>Dual</td>
<td>Plural</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>मघुः</td>
<td>madhuḥ</td>
<td>मघवः</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>madhū</td>
<td>madhā</td>
<td>madhavaḥ</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>मघुम्</td>
<td>madhum</td>
<td>मघून्</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>मघुना</td>
<td>madhunā</td>
<td>मघुभिः</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>madhubhyām</td>
<td>madhū</td>
<td>madhubhiḥ</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>मघवे</td>
<td>madhave</td>
<td>मघुभयः</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>madhubhyām</td>
<td>madhubhyāṁ</td>
<td>madhubhyayah</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>मघोः</td>
<td>madhoh</td>
<td>मघुभयः</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>madhubhyām</td>
<td>madhubhyayah</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>मघोः</td>
<td>madhoh</td>
<td>मघोः</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>madhvoḥ</td>
<td>madhunām</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>मघाँ</td>
<td>madhau</td>
<td>मघुषु</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>madhvoḥ</td>
<td></td>
<td>madhuṣu</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>मघोः</td>
<td>madho</td>
<td>मघवः</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>madhū</td>
<td>madhavaḥ</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

But note that the case 7 singular is -au for both -i stems and -u stems:
śucau
in the clean (thing)

madhau
in the sweet (thing)

The feminine endings are similar to the endings we saw above. This includes the optional forms in the singular of cases 4 to 7, which might act like -ū stems:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case 1</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Dual</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>मधुः</td>
<td>madhuḥ</td>
<td>मधूः</td>
<td>madhavaḥ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>मधुम्</td>
<td>madhum</td>
<td>मधूम्</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>मधुना</td>
<td>madhunā</td>
<td>मधुनाः</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>मधवे</td>
<td>madhave</td>
<td>मधवे</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>मधो:, स्व्</td>
<td>madhoḥ, madhvāḥ</td>
<td>मधो:, स्व्</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>मधाः, मधाम्</td>
<td>madhau, madhvām</td>
<td>मधाः, मधाम्</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>मधो</td>
<td>madho</td>
<td>मधूः</td>
<td>madhavaḥ</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Like before, note that the case 2 feminine plural is *madhūḥ* as opposed to the masculine *madhūn*.

The neuter endings are again similar to what we saw above:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Dual</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>मधु</td>
<td>मधुनी</td>
<td>मधूनि</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>madhu</td>
<td>madhunī</td>
<td>madhūnī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>मधु</td>
<td>मधुनी</td>
<td>मधूनि</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>madhu</td>
<td>madhunī</td>
<td>madhūnī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>मधुना</td>
<td>मधुन्याम्</td>
<td>मधुभिं:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>madhunā</td>
<td>madhubhyām</td>
<td>madhubhiḥ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>मधुने</td>
<td>मधुन्याम्</td>
<td>मधुभ्य:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>madhune</td>
<td>madhubhyām</td>
<td>madhubhyaḥ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>मधुन:</td>
<td>मधुन्याम्</td>
<td>मधुभ्य:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>madhunaḥ</td>
<td>madhubhyām</td>
<td>madhubhyaḥ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>मधुन:</td>
<td>मधुन: मधुनो:</td>
<td>मधूनाम्</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>madhunaḥ</td>
<td>madhunoḥ</td>
<td>madhūnām</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>मधुनि</td>
<td>मधुन: मधुनो:</td>
<td>मधुष्</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>madhuni</td>
<td>madhunoḥ</td>
<td>madhuṣu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>मधु</td>
<td>मधुनी</td>
<td>मधूनि</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>madhu</td>
<td>madhunī</td>
<td>madhūnī</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Review**

If you are tempted to memorize these endings, we urge you instead to work on acquisition.

1. The feminine -i and -u have optional forms for certain cases and numbers. Which cases and numbers?
-ṛ stems

Our fourth stem family is the family of -ṛ stems, which are usually masculine or neuter. These stems mostly use the basic nominal endings. But unlike the stems we have seen so far, these stems will change in certain cases and numbers. These changes occur only for the masculine stem.

For example, consider the stem ḫarṭṛ, which means “doer” or “maker.” Suppose we use the stem ḫarṭṛ in the masculine gender. In cases 1, 2, and 8 (except for the case 2 plural), the stem becomes ḫartār instead, and the final -ṛ is dropped in the case 1 singular.

Many of the stems that end with consonants change similarly. These changed stems are often called strong stems, and the others are called weak stems. In the table below, all of the strong stems are highlighted:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Dual</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>कर्ता (kartā)</td>
<td>कर्तारो (kartārau)</td>
<td>कर्तारः (kartāraḥ)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>कर्तारम् (kartāram)</td>
<td>कर्तारो (kartārau)</td>
<td>कर्तृन् (kartṝn)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>कर्त्रा (kartrā)</td>
<td>कर्त्र्याम् (kartṛbhyaṃ)</td>
<td>कर्त्र्भिः (kartṛbhīḥ)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>कर्त्रेन (kartre)</td>
<td>कर्त्र्याम् (kartṛbhyaṃ)</td>
<td>कर्त्र्यभ्यः (kartṛbhyaḥ)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>कर्तूः (kartuḥ)</td>
<td>कर्त्र्याम् (kartṛbhyaṃ)</td>
<td>कर्त्र्यभ्यः (kartṛbhyaḥ)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>कर्तूः (kartuḥ)</td>
<td>कर्त्रोः (kartroḥ)</td>
<td>कर्त्र्याम् (kartṝṇām)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>कर्तारि (kartaḥ)</td>
<td>कर्तारोः (kartārau)</td>
<td>कर्तारः (kartāraḥ)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>कर्ताः (kartaḥ)</td>
<td>कर्तारो यु (kartārau yu)</td>
<td>कर्ताः (kartaḥ)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

As for the endings used by this stem, we have only a few comments to make. In the singular, notice the use of *kartuḥ* for cases 5 and 6. The case 7 singular, *kartari*, uses the normal ending but with a different stem.

In the plural, notice the use of *kartṝn* and *kartṝṇām*, which resemble the other masculine endings we've seen:

```
 kartṝn, kartṝṇām
```

(*kartr*, plural, in cases 2 and 6)
ガジャ, ガジャनाम

gajān, gajānām
(gaja, plural, in cases 2 and 6)

シュッシ, シュッシナム

śucīn, śucīnām
(śuci, plural, in cases 2 and 6)

マドゥ, マドゥナム

madhūn, madhūnām
(madhu, plural, in cases 2 and 6)

Finally, notice that the case 8 singular is kartāḥ. Here, the original form is kartar, which becomes kartāḥ due to sandhi. kartāḥ and a word like rāmaḥ mostly follow the same sandhi rules. But where rāmaḥ would become rāmo, kartāḥ becomes kartar:

राम: नगरम् गच्छति → रामो नगरं गच्छति

rāmaḥ nagaram gacchati → rāmo nagaram gacchati
Rama goes to the city.

कर्त: नगरम् गच्छ → कर्तरे नगरं गच्छ

kartāḥ nagaram gaccha → kartar nagaram gaccha
O doer, go to the city.

Here are the neuter endings for the -r stems:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case 1</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Dual</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>कर्त्तृ</td>
<td>kartṛ</td>
<td>कर्त्त्रणी</td>
<td>kartṛṇi</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case 2</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Dual</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>कर्त्तृ</td>
<td>kartṛ</td>
<td>कर्त्त्रणी</td>
<td>kartṛṇi</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case 8</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Dual</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>कर्त्तृ</td>
<td>kartṛ</td>
<td>कर्त्त्रणी</td>
<td>kartṛṇi</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

These follow the same kinds of patterns we've seen before.

**Family words**

Many -ṛ stems refer to different family members. The four examples below use the words *pitr*, *mātr*, *bhrātr*, and *svaṛ*:

दशरथो रामस्य पिता।
*daśaratho rāmasya pitā.*
Dasharatha is Rama's father.

कौसल्या रामस्य माता।
*kausalyā rāmasya mātā.*
Kausalya is Rama's mother.

लक्ष्मणो रामस्य भ्राता।
*lakṣmaṇo rāmasya bhrātā.*
Lakshmana is Rama's brother.

रामस्य न स्वसा।
*rāmasya na svasā.*
Rama doesn't have a sister.

Most of these words use -ar instead of -ār for their strong stem:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Dual</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>पिता</td>
<td>पितरो</td>
<td>पितरः</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>pitā</td>
<td>pitara</td>
<td>pitaraḥ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>पितरम्</td>
<td>पितरो</td>
<td>पितृन्</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>pitaram</td>
<td>pitara</td>
<td>pitṝn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>पित्रा</td>
<td>पित्रभ्याम्</td>
<td>पित्रभिः</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>pitrā</td>
<td>pitṛbhya</td>
<td>pitṛbhiḥ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>पित्रे</td>
<td>पित्रभ्याम्</td>
<td>पित्रभः</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>pitre</td>
<td>pitṛbhya</td>
<td>pitṛbhyaḥ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>पितूः</td>
<td>पित्रभ्याम्</td>
<td>पित्रभः</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>pituḥ</td>
<td>pitṛbhya</td>
<td>pitṛbhyaḥ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>पितूः</td>
<td>पित्रभ्याम्</td>
<td>पित्रभः</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>pituḥ</td>
<td>pitroḥ</td>
<td>pitṛṇām</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>पितारि</td>
<td>पित्रभ्याम्</td>
<td>पित्रभः</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>pitari</td>
<td>pitroḥ</td>
<td>pitṛṣu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>पितः</td>
<td>पितरां</td>
<td>पितरः</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>pitaḥ</td>
<td>pitara</td>
<td>pitaraḥ</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The feminine stem *mātṛ* uses *mātṝḥ* in the case 2 plural. Otherwise, it uses the same endings as *pitr*: 
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case 1</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Dual</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>माता</td>
<td>mātā</td>
<td>मात्रो</td>
<td>मातर:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>मात्रम्</td>
<td>mātaram</td>
<td>मात्रो</td>
<td>मातृ:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case 2</td>
<td>मात्रम्</td>
<td>मात्रम</td>
<td>मात्र:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>मात्रम्</td>
<td>mātaram</td>
<td>मात्रम</td>
<td>मात्र:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>मात्रम्</td>
<td>mātaram</td>
<td>मात्रम</td>
<td>मात्र:</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case 3</th>
<th>मात्रा</th>
<th>मात्राब्याम्</th>
<th>मात्रभिः</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>मात्रा</td>
<td>mātrā</td>
<td>mātṛbhyām</td>
<td>mātṛbhīḥ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>मात्रे</td>
<td>mātre</td>
<td>mātṛbhyām</td>
<td>mātṛbhyaḥ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>मातु:</td>
<td>mātuḥ</td>
<td>mātṛbhyām</td>
<td>mātṛbhyaḥ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>मातु:</td>
<td>mātuḥ</td>
<td>mātṛbhyām</td>
<td>mātṛbhyaḥ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case 6</td>
<td>मातु:</td>
<td>मात्रो:</td>
<td>मातृणाम्</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>मातु:</td>
<td>mātuḥ</td>
<td>mātroḥ</td>
<td>mātṝṇām</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>मातरि</td>
<td>mātari</td>
<td>mātroḥ</td>
<td>mātṛṣu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>मात:</td>
<td>mātaḥ</td>
<td>mātarau</td>
<td>mātaraḥ</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

However, *svasṛ* uses the normal strong stem (*svasār*). Here are the cases that differ from *mātr* above:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case 1</th>
<th>स्वसाना</th>
<th>स्वसारां</th>
<th>स्वसारः</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Case 2</td>
<td>स्वसारम्</td>
<td>स्वसारां</td>
<td>स्वस्त्रः</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case 8</td>
<td>स्वसः</td>
<td>स्वसारां</td>
<td>स्वसारः</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Review**

We are almost done with our study of the major stem families.

1. What is the strong stem of *kartr*?
2. What is the strong stem of *pitr*?
3. What is the strong stem of *svastr*?
-ai, -o, and -au stems

There are only a few stems that end in the vowels -ai, -o, or -au. They generally use the basic nominal endings we've seen.

-ai stems

The main example of an -ai stem is the masculine stem rai, which means “wealth” or “prosperity.” If its ending starts with a vowel, it stays the same. Otherwise, it becomes rā:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Dual</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>रा:</td>
<td>रायः</td>
<td>रायः</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>rāḥ</td>
<td>rāyau</td>
<td>rāyaḥ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>रायःः</td>
<td>रायः</td>
<td>रायः</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>rāyam</td>
<td>rāyau</td>
<td>rāyaḥ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>रायः</td>
<td>रायःःना</td>
<td>रायःः</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>rāyā</td>
<td>rābhyām</td>
<td>rābhiḥ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>रायःः</td>
<td>रायःः</td>
<td>रायःः</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>rāye</td>
<td>rābhyām</td>
<td>rābhyāḥ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>रायःः</td>
<td>रायःः</td>
<td>रायःः</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>rāyaḥ</td>
<td>rābhyām</td>
<td>rābhyāḥ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>रायःः</td>
<td>रायःः</td>
<td>रायःः</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>rāyaḥ</td>
<td>rāyoḥ</td>
<td>rāyām</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>रायःः</td>
<td>रायःः</td>
<td>रायःः</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>rāyi</td>
<td>rāyoh</td>
<td>rāṣu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>रा:</td>
<td>रायः</td>
<td>रायः</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>rāḥ</td>
<td>rāyau</td>
<td>rāyaḥ</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**-o stems**

The two common -o stems are गो ("cow") and द्यो ("sky", "heaven"). गो can be either masculine or feminine according to the animal's gender. And द्यो is always feminine.

The -o stems generally use the basic endings, but they make many small changes, as well. You can see their endings below:
### Singular Dual Plural

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case 1</th>
<th>गौः</th>
<th>गावौ</th>
<th>गावः</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>gauḥ</td>
<td>gāvau</td>
<td>gāvaḥ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case 2</th>
<th>गाम्</th>
<th>गावौ</th>
<th>गा:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>gām</td>
<td>gāvau</td>
<td>gāḥ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case 3</th>
<th>गवा</th>
<th>गोभ्याम्</th>
<th>गोभिः:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>gavā</td>
<td>gobhyām</td>
<td>gobhiḥ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case 4</th>
<th>गवे</th>
<th>गोभ्याम्</th>
<th>गोभ्यः:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>gave</td>
<td>gobhyām</td>
<td>gobhyaḥ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case 5</th>
<th>गोः</th>
<th>गोभ्याम्</th>
<th>गोभ्यः:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>goḥ</td>
<td>gobhyām</td>
<td>gobhyaḥ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case 6</th>
<th>गोः</th>
<th>गवौ:</th>
<th>गवाम्</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>goḥ</td>
<td>gavoḥ</td>
<td>gavām</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case 7</th>
<th>गवि</th>
<th>गवौ:</th>
<th>गोषु</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>gavi</td>
<td>gavoḥ</td>
<td>goṣu</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case 8</th>
<th>गौः</th>
<th>गावौ</th>
<th>गावः</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>gauḥ</td>
<td>gāvau</td>
<td>gāvaḥ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**-au stems**

The main example of an -au stem is the feminine stem nau, which means “boat.” nau uses the normal endings and uses normal sandhi changes.

We learned about the stem nau when we studied the basic nominal endings. But for convenience, we will repeat it here:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Dual</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>नौः</td>
<td>नावौ</td>
<td>नावः</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>nauḥ</td>
<td>nāvau</td>
<td>nāvaḥ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>नावम्</td>
<td>नावौ</td>
<td>नावः</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>nāvam</td>
<td>nāvau</td>
<td>nāvaḥ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>नावा</td>
<td>नाभ्याम्</td>
<td>नाभ्यिः</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>nāvā</td>
<td>naubhyām</td>
<td>naubhiḥ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>नावे</td>
<td>नाभ्याम्</td>
<td>नाभ्यः</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>nāve</td>
<td>naubhyām</td>
<td>naubhyāḥ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>नावः</td>
<td>नाभ्याम्</td>
<td>नाभ्यः</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>nāvaḥ</td>
<td>naubhyām</td>
<td>naubhyāḥ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>नावः</td>
<td>नावोः</td>
<td>नावाम्</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>nāvaḥ</td>
<td>nāvoh</td>
<td>nāvām</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>नावि</td>
<td>नावोः</td>
<td>नाभु</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>nāvi</td>
<td>nāvoh</td>
<td>nauṣu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>नौः</td>
<td>नावौ</td>
<td>नावः</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>nauḥ</td>
<td>nāvau</td>
<td>nāvaḥ</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Review**

1. Which stems end in -ai?
2. Which stems end in -o?
3. Which stems end in -au?
Consonant stems

Consonant stems are the last of the major families of nominal stems. As you might guess, these stems end in consonants.

Consonant stems use the basic nominal endings we saw earlier. But some consonant stems have strong and weak versions that they use in front of different endings, just as the -ṛ stems do. And since these stems end in consonants, various sandhi changes might occur.

As a reminder, we use the strong stem in cases 1, 2 and 8 (except for the plural of case 2) and the weak stem everywhere else.

Basic consonant stems

Many consonant stems have strong and weak versions. But there also many that use just one version for all endings. Let's quickly learn about these basic consonant stems, which use the same version with all endings.

Here are the forms of the masculine stem marut, which means “wind.” Apart from some sandhi changes, all of these forms are regular:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case 1</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Dual</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>मरुत्</td>
<td>marut</td>
<td>मरुतौ</td>
<td>मरुत:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>मरुतम्</td>
<td>marutam</td>
<td>मरुतौ</td>
<td>मरुत:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>मरुता</td>
<td>marutaḥ</td>
<td>मरुतौ</td>
<td>मरुत:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>मरुते</td>
<td>marute</td>
<td>मरुतौ</td>
<td>मरुत:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>मरुतः</td>
<td>marutaḥ</td>
<td>मरुतौ</td>
<td>मरुत:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>मरुति</td>
<td>maruti</td>
<td>मरुतौ</td>
<td>मरुत:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>मरुत्</td>
<td>marut</td>
<td>मरुतौ</td>
<td>मरुत:</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Likewise, here are the forms of the neuter stem *manas*, which means “mind.” All of these forms use the basic nominal endings:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case 1</th>
<th>नष्णः</th>
<th>नसरी</th>
<th>ननाअंस</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>manaḥ</td>
<td>manasī</td>
<td>manāṃsi</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case 2</th>
<th>नष्णः</th>
<th>नसरी</th>
<th>ननाअंस</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>manaḥ</td>
<td>manasī</td>
<td>manāṃsi</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case 3</th>
<th>मनसा</th>
<th>मनोभ्याम्</th>
<th>मनोभिः:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>manasā</td>
<td>manobhyām</td>
<td>manobhiḥ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case 4</th>
<th>मनसे</th>
<th>मनोभ्याम्</th>
<th>मनोभ्य:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>manase</td>
<td>manobhyām</td>
<td>manobhyaḥ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case 5</th>
<th>मनस:</th>
<th>मनोभ्याम्</th>
<th>मनोभ्य:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>manasaḥ</td>
<td>manobhyām</td>
<td>manobhyaḥ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case 6</th>
<th>मनस:</th>
<th>मनसोः</th>
<th>मनसाम्</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>manasaḥ</td>
<td>manasōḥ</td>
<td>manasām</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case 7</th>
<th>मनसि</th>
<th>मनसोः</th>
<th>मन:सु</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>manasi</td>
<td>manasōḥ</td>
<td>manahsu</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case 8</th>
<th>नष्णः</th>
<th>नसरी</th>
<th>ननाअंस</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>manaḥ</td>
<td>manasī</td>
<td>manāṃsi</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**-at, -mat, and -vat**

Many of the words that end in at are created with the suffixes -at, -mat, and -vat.

at is a root suffix. When we attach it to a root that means “X,” we get a stem that means “(someone who is) X-ing”:
पश्यत्
paśyat
(someone who is) seeing

अहम् सिंहं पश्यन्त धावामि।
aham simhaṁ paśyan dhāvāmi.
I, seeing the lion, run.

And -mat and -vat are nominal suffixes that mean “possessing X”:

भगवत्
bhagavat
having glory or fortune; glorious, fortunate, blessed

हनुमत्
hanumat
having (prominent) jaws; Hanuman

Generally, all of these stems use the same endings. The strong stem is -ant, and the weak stem is -at.

Here are the masculine forms of the adjective bhagavat, which means “blessed” or “fortunate”: 
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case 1</th>
<th>भगवान्</th>
<th>भगवन्तो</th>
<th>भगवतः</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bhagavān</td>
<td>bhagavantau</td>
<td>bhagavantaḥ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case 2</td>
<td>भगवन्तम्</td>
<td>भगवन्तो</td>
<td>भगवतः</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bhagavantam</td>
<td>bhagavantau</td>
<td>bhagavataḥ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case 3</td>
<td>भगवता</td>
<td>भगवद्याम्</td>
<td>भगवद्यि</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bhagavatā</td>
<td>bhagavadbhyām</td>
<td>bhagavadbhīḥ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case 4</td>
<td>भगवते</td>
<td>भगवद्याम्</td>
<td>भगवद्यि</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bhagavate</td>
<td>bhagavadbhyām</td>
<td>bhagavadbhyāḥ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case 5</td>
<td>भगवतः</td>
<td>भगवद्याम्</td>
<td>भगवद्यि</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bhagavataḥ</td>
<td>bhagavadbhyām</td>
<td>bhagavadbhyāḥ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case 6</td>
<td>भगवतः</td>
<td>भगवतोः</td>
<td>भगवताम्</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bhagavataḥ</td>
<td>bhagavatoḥ</td>
<td>bhagavatām</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case 7</td>
<td>भगवति</td>
<td>भगवतोः</td>
<td>भगवत्सु</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bhagavati</td>
<td>bhagavatoḥ</td>
<td>bhagavatsu</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case 8</td>
<td>भगवन्</td>
<td>भगवन्तो</td>
<td>भगवतः</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bhagavan</td>
<td>bhagavantau</td>
<td>bhagavantaḥ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

As before, the strong stems are highlighted. Notice the long vowel in the case 1 singular (bhagavān) and the short vowel in the case 8 singular (bhagavan).

One small exception is that the case 1 singular of -at is -an, not -ān:

हनुमन् → हनुमान्
hanuman → hanumān
Hanuman (case 1 singular)
Next, here are the neuter endings of *bhagavat*:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Dual</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Case 1</td>
<td><em>भगवत्</em></td>
<td><em>भगवती</em></td>
<td><em>भगवन्ति</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>bhagavat</em></td>
<td><em>bhagavati</em></td>
<td><em>bhagavanti</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case 2</td>
<td><em>भगवत्</em></td>
<td><em>भगवती</em></td>
<td><em>भगवन्ति</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>bhagavat</em></td>
<td><em>bhagavati</em></td>
<td><em>bhagavanti</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case 8</td>
<td><em>भगवत्</em></td>
<td><em>भगवती</em></td>
<td><em>भगवन्ति</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>bhagavat</em></td>
<td><em>bhagavati</em></td>
<td><em>bhagavanti</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For the feminine, we usually use the endings *-antī*, *-vatī*, and *-matī*. We then use the normal endings for *-ī* stems.

**Roots in the *hu* class will use *-atī* instead of *-antī*. What is the *hu* class? See our lesson on verb classes for more information.**

**-an, -man, and -van**

These stems are formed with the suffixes *-an*, *-man*, or *-van*. The strong stem is *-ān* and the weak stem is *-a*. But if the ending starts with a vowel, we use *-an*.

Here are the forms of the masculine stem *ātman*, which means “self”: 
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Dual</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>आत्मा (atmā)</td>
<td>आत्मानो (ātmānau)</td>
<td>आत्मनः (ātmānah)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>आत्मानम् (ātmānam)</td>
<td>आत्मानो (ātmānau)</td>
<td>आत्मनः (ātmanaḥ)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>आत्मान (ātmanā)</td>
<td>आत्मब्याम् (ātmabhyām)</td>
<td>आत्मभिः (ātmbhiḥ)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>आत्मने (ātmane)</td>
<td>आत्मब्याम् (ātmabhyām)</td>
<td>आत्मभ्य (ātmabhyaḥ)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>आत्मनः (ātmanaḥ)</td>
<td>आत्मब्याम् (ātmabhyām)</td>
<td>आत्मभ्य (ātmabhyaḥ)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>आत्मनः (ātmanaḥ)</td>
<td>आत्मनोः (ātmanoḥ)</td>
<td>आत्मनाम् (ātmanām)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>आत्मनि (ātmani)</td>
<td>आत्मनोः (ātmanoḥ)</td>
<td>आत्मसु (ātmasu)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>आत्मन् (ātman)</td>
<td>आत्मानो (ātmānau)</td>
<td>आत्मनः (ātmānah)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note that the case 1 singular is आत्मा (atmā) and has no final -n sound.

Here are forms of the neuter stem karman, which roughly means “action”:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Dual</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>karma</td>
<td>karmanī</td>
<td>karmāṇi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>karma</td>
<td>karmanī</td>
<td>karmāṇi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>karma</td>
<td>karmanī</td>
<td>karmāṇi</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note the change from न to न, which is caused by a sandhi rule.

**-in, -min, and -vin**

These stems are formed with the suffixes *-in*, *-min*, or *-vin*. The strong stem is *-in* and the weak stem is *-i*. But if the ending starts with a vowel, we use *-in* instead.

Here are the forms of the masculine stem yogin, which means “yogi”:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case 1</th>
<th>Case 2</th>
<th>Case 3</th>
<th>Case 4</th>
<th>Case 5</th>
<th>Case 6</th>
<th>Case 7</th>
<th>Case 8</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>योगी</td>
<td>योगिनम्</td>
<td>योगिना</td>
<td>योगिनी</td>
<td>योगिनः</td>
<td>योगिन:</td>
<td>योगिन:</td>
<td>योगिन:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yogī</td>
<td>yoginam</td>
<td>yoginā</td>
<td>yogini</td>
<td>yoginah</td>
<td>yoginā</td>
<td>yoginā</td>
<td>yoginā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>योगिनो</td>
<td>योगिनो</td>
<td>योगिनो</td>
<td>योगिनो</td>
<td>योगिनो</td>
<td>योगिनो</td>
<td>योगिनो</td>
<td>योगिनो</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yogino</td>
<td>yogino</td>
<td>yogino</td>
<td>yogino</td>
<td>yogino</td>
<td>yogino</td>
<td>yogino</td>
<td>yogino</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>योगिन्</td>
<td>योगिन्</td>
<td>योगिन्</td>
<td>योगिन्</td>
<td>योगिन्</td>
<td>योगिन्</td>
<td>योगिन्</td>
<td>योगिन्</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yoginau</td>
<td>yoginau</td>
<td>yoginau</td>
<td>yoginau</td>
<td>yoginau</td>
<td>yoginau</td>
<td>yoginau</td>
<td>yoginau</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>योगिनः</td>
<td>योगिनः</td>
<td>योगिनः</td>
<td>योगिनः</td>
<td>योगिनः</td>
<td>योगिनः</td>
<td>योगिनः</td>
<td>योगिनः</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yoginaḥ</td>
<td>yoginaḥ</td>
<td>yoginaḥ</td>
<td>yoginaḥ</td>
<td>yoginaḥ</td>
<td>yoginaḥ</td>
<td>yoginaḥ</td>
<td>yoginaḥ</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

As above, note that the case 1 singular is yogī and has no final -n sound.

Here are the forms of the neuter stem:
| Case 1 | Singular | योगी | योगिनी | योगिनि |
|        | Dual     | yogi  | yoginī  | yoginī  |
| Case 2 | Singular | योगी | योगिनी | योगिनि |
|        | Dual     | yogi  | yoginī  | yoginī  |
| Case 8 | Singular | योगी | योगिनी | योगिनि |
|        | Dual     | yogi  | yoginī  | yoginī  |

-vas, -ivas, and -yas

-vas is a root suffix. When we attach it to a root that means “X,” we usually get a stem that means “one who has X-ed.” Some roots will use the suffix -ivas instead.

For -vas, the strong stem is -vāṃs and the weak stem is -uṣ. But if the ending starts with a consonant, we use -vat instead. -ivas is similar, except that its strong stem is -ivāṃs and we use -ivat if the ending starts with a consonant.

Here are the masculine forms of the stem vidvas, which means “one who knows” or “a wise person”:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Dual</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>विद्वान्</td>
<td>विद्वासोऽ</td>
<td>विद्वास:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>vidvān</td>
<td>vidvāmsau</td>
<td>vidvāmsah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>विद्वासम्</td>
<td>विद्वासोऽ</td>
<td>विदुषः</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>vidvāṃsam</td>
<td>vidvāmsau</td>
<td>viduṣah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>विदुषा</td>
<td>विद्वद्वाम्</td>
<td>विद्वद्विः</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>viduṣā</td>
<td>vidvadbhyām</td>
<td>vidvadbhiḥ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>विदुषे</td>
<td>विद्वद्वाम्</td>
<td>विद्वचः</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>viduṣe</td>
<td>vidvadbhyām</td>
<td>vidvadbhyāḥ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>विदुषः</td>
<td>विद्वद्वाम्</td>
<td>विद्वचः</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>viduṣah</td>
<td>vidvadbhyām</td>
<td>vidvadbhyāḥ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>विदुषः</td>
<td>विदुषोऽ</td>
<td>विदुषाम्</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>viduṣah</td>
<td>viduṣoḥ</td>
<td>viduṣām</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>विदुषि</td>
<td>विदुषोऽ</td>
<td>विदद्वत्सु</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>viduṣi</td>
<td>viduṣoḥ</td>
<td>vidvatsu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>विद्वान्</td>
<td>विद्वासोऽ</td>
<td>विद्वास:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>vidvan</td>
<td>vidvāmsau</td>
<td>vidvāmsah</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Here is the same stem in the neuter:
-yas is a nominal suffix. When added to a nominal stem that means “X,” -yas creates a stem that means “more X.” Its strong stem is -yāṃs and its weak stem is -yas.

Here are the masculine forms of the adjective śreyas, which means “better”:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case 1</th>
<th>Case 2</th>
<th>Case 8</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>विद्वत्</td>
<td>विद्वत्</td>
<td>विद्वत्</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vidvat</td>
<td>vidvat</td>
<td>vidvat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>विदुषी</td>
<td>विदुषी</td>
<td>विदुषी</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>viduṣī</td>
<td>viduṣī</td>
<td>viduṣī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>विद्वांसि</td>
<td>विद्वांसि</td>
<td>विद्वांसि</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vidvāṃsi</td>
<td>vidvāṃsi</td>
<td>vidvāṃsi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case</td>
<td>Singular</td>
<td>Dual</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>श्रेर्यान्</td>
<td>श्रेर्यांसौ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>śreyān</td>
<td>śreyāmsau</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>श्रेर्यांसम्</td>
<td>श्रेर्यांसौ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>śreyāṃsam</td>
<td>śreyāmsau</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>श्रेर्यसा</td>
<td>श्रेर्योभ्याम्</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>śreyasā</td>
<td>śreyobhyām</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>श्रेर्यसे</td>
<td>श्रेर्योभ्याम्</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>śreyase</td>
<td>śreyobhyām</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>श्रेर्यस:</td>
<td>श्रेर्योभ्याम्</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>śreyasaḥ</td>
<td>śreyobhyām</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>श्रेर्यस:</td>
<td>श्रेर्यसो:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>śreyasaḥ</td>
<td>śreyasoḥ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>श्रेर्यसि</td>
<td>श्रेर्यसो:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>śreyasi</td>
<td>śreyasoḥ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>श्रेर्यन्</td>
<td>श्रेर्यांसौ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>śreyan</td>
<td>śreyāmsau</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

And in the neuter:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Dual</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Case 1</td>
<td>श्रेयः</td>
<td>श्रेयसी</td>
<td>श्रेयांसि</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>śreyah</td>
<td>śreyast</td>
<td>śreyāṃsi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case 2</td>
<td>श्रेयः</td>
<td>श्रेयसी</td>
<td>श्रेयांसि</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>śreyah</td>
<td>śreyast</td>
<td>śreyāṃsi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case 8</td>
<td>श्रेयः</td>
<td>श्रेयसी</td>
<td>श्रेयांसि</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>śreyah</td>
<td>śreyast</td>
<td>śreyāṃsi</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Nominals 2: Pronouns and numbers
asmad and yuṣmad
Also known as: personal pronouns

Pronouns are words like “I,” “you,” “he,” “they,” and so on. They can often replace other nominal words:

रामो नगरं गच्छति।
rāmo nagaraṃ gacchati.
Rama goes to the city.

स नगरं गच्छति।
sa nagaraṃ gacchati.
He goes to the city.

We can often leave out a pronoun entirely if it is clear from context:

स नगरं गच्छति।
sa nagaraṃ gacchati.
He goes to the city.

नगरं गच्छति।
nagaraṃ gacchati.
(He) goes to the city.

But even so, pronouns are still expressive and useful words.

In this topic, we will learn about the common Sanskrit pronouns. Pronouns use many of the same endings as other nominals. But generally, they follow very different patterns and must be learned individually.

asmad

First, let's consider the first-person pronoun asmad (“I”, “we”):
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case 1</th>
<th>Case 2</th>
<th>Case 3</th>
<th>Case 4</th>
<th>Case 5</th>
<th>Case 6</th>
<th>Case 7</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>अहम्</td>
<td>माम्</td>
<td>मया</td>
<td>मह्यम्</td>
<td>मत्</td>
<td>मम</td>
<td>मयि</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aham</td>
<td>mām</td>
<td>mayā</td>
<td>mahyam</td>
<td>mat</td>
<td>mama</td>
<td>mayi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>आवाम्</td>
<td>आवाम्</td>
<td>आवास्याम्</td>
<td>आवास्याम्</td>
<td>आवास्याम्</td>
<td>आवास्याम्</td>
<td>आवास्याम्</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>āvām</td>
<td>āvām</td>
<td>āvābhyām</td>
<td>āvābhyām</td>
<td>āvābhyām</td>
<td>āvābhyām</td>
<td>āvābhyām</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>वयम्</td>
<td>अस्मिनान्</td>
<td>अस्मिनाभष्णः</td>
<td>अस्मिनाभष्णः</td>
<td>अस्मिनाभष्णः</td>
<td>अस्मिनाभष्णः</td>
<td>अस्मिनाभष्णः</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vayam</td>
<td>asmān</td>
<td>asmābhiḥ</td>
<td>asmābhyam</td>
<td>asmābhyam</td>
<td>asmābhyam</td>
<td>asmābhyam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

There are a few points worth noting here. First, notice that *asmad* does not appear in case 8. Many pronouns appear only in the first 7 cases. Next, these words use multiple different stems:

- अहम्  
  *aham*  
  I

- माम्  
  *mām*  
  me
आवाम्
āvām
the two of us

वयम्
vayam
me

अस्मान्
asmān
us

Also, notice that many of these words are similar to the words we use in English:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sanskrit word</th>
<th>English word</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>अहम्</td>
<td>ego</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aham</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>माम्</td>
<td>me</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mām</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>वयम्</td>
<td>we</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vayam</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>अस्मान्</td>
<td>us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>asmān</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

युष्माद
yuṣmad

युष्माद (“you”) follows the same general pattern as asmād:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Dual</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>tvam</td>
<td>yuvām</td>
<td>yūyam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>tvām</td>
<td>yuvām</td>
<td>yuṣmān</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>tvayā</td>
<td>yuvābhyaṃ</td>
<td>yuṣmabhiḥ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>tubhyam</td>
<td>yuvābhyaṃ</td>
<td>yuṣmabhyam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>tvat</td>
<td>yuvābhyaṃ</td>
<td>yuṣmat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>tava</td>
<td>yuvayōḥ</td>
<td>yuṣmākam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>tvayi</td>
<td>yuvayōḥ</td>
<td>yuṣmāsu</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Again, note that many of these words have English counterparts:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sanskrit word</th>
<th>English word</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>tvam</td>
<td>thou</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yuvām</td>
<td>you</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
tad, etad, idam, and adas
Also known as: demonstrative pronouns

The four pronouns tad, etad, idam, and adas have similar meanings. In theory, here is how they differ:

- We use etad (“this”) for what is near at hand
- We use idam (“this”) for what is slightly further away.
- We use adas (“that”) for what is much further away.
- We use tad (“that”) for what is not present.

Below, we provide the forms for all of these pronouns in all three genders.

**tad and etad**

Here are the masculine forms for tad:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Sanskrit</th>
<th>Dual</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>सष्णः</td>
<td>तौः</td>
<td>ते</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>saḥ</td>
<td>tau</td>
<td>te</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>तम्</td>
<td>तौः</td>
<td>तान्</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tam</td>
<td>tau</td>
<td>tān</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>तेन</td>
<td>ताभ्याम्</td>
<td>तैः</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tena</td>
<td>tābhyām</td>
<td>taiḥ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>तस्मैः</td>
<td>ताभ्याम्</td>
<td>तेभ्यः</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tasmāi</td>
<td>tābhyām</td>
<td>tebhyaḥ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>तस्मात्</td>
<td>ताभ्याम्</td>
<td>तेभ्यः</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tasmāt</td>
<td>tābhyām</td>
<td>tebhyaḥ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>तस्य</td>
<td>तयोः</td>
<td>तेषाम्</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tasya</td>
<td>tayoh</td>
<td>teṣām</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>तस्मिन्</td>
<td>तयोः</td>
<td>तेषु</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tasmin</td>
<td>tayoh</td>
<td>teṣu</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Again, note that many of these words have English counterparts:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sanskrit word</th>
<th>English word</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>तत्</td>
<td>that</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tat</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ते</td>
<td>they</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>te</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Feminine:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Dual</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Case 1</td>
<td>सा</td>
<td>ते</td>
<td>ताः</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>sā</td>
<td>te</td>
<td>tāḥ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case 2</td>
<td>ताम्</td>
<td>ते</td>
<td>ताः</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tām</td>
<td>te</td>
<td>tāḥ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case 3</td>
<td>तत्या</td>
<td>ताभ्याम्</td>
<td>ताभिः</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tayā</td>
<td>tābhyām</td>
<td>tābhiḥ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case 4</td>
<td>तस्याई</td>
<td>ताभ्याम्</td>
<td>ताभ्यः</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tasyai</td>
<td>tābhyām</td>
<td>tābhyāḥ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case 5</td>
<td>तस्याः</td>
<td>ताभ्याम्</td>
<td>ताभ्यः</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tasyaḥ</td>
<td>tābhyām</td>
<td>tābhyāḥ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case 6</td>
<td>तस्याः</td>
<td>तयोः</td>
<td>तासाम्</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tasyaḥ</td>
<td>tayoḥ</td>
<td>tāsām</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case 7</td>
<td>तस्याम्</td>
<td>तयोः</td>
<td>तासु</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tasyām</td>
<td>tayoḥ</td>
<td>tāsu</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Neuter:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Dual</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Case 1</td>
<td>तत्</td>
<td>ते</td>
<td>तानि</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tat</td>
<td>te</td>
<td>tāni</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case 2</td>
<td>तत्</td>
<td>ते</td>
<td>तानि</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tat</td>
<td>te</td>
<td>tāni</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
To get the forms for *etad*, we add an *e-* to the beginning of each form. The only unusual changes are that *saḥ* becomes *eṣaḥ* and *sā* becomes *eṣā*. These changes are due to normal sandhi rules:

स खादति → एष खादति।

*sa khādati* → *eṣa khādati.*

He eats.

सा खादति → एषा खादति।

*sā khādati* → *eṣā khādati.*

She eats.

*idam*

Masculine:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case 1</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Dual</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>अयम्</td>
<td>अयम्</td>
<td>इमौ</td>
<td>इमे</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>इतौ</td>
<td>इमौ</td>
<td>इमौ</td>
<td>इमे</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>इते</td>
<td>इमौ</td>
<td>इमौ</td>
<td>इमे</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case 2</th>
<th>इमम्</th>
<th>इमौ</th>
<th>इमान्</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>इतौ</td>
<td>इमौ</td>
<td>इमौ</td>
<td>इमान्</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>इनान ज्</td>
<td>इमान्</td>
<td>इमान्</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case 3</th>
<th>अनेन</th>
<th>आभ्याम्</th>
<th>एभि:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>अनेन</td>
<td>आभ्याम्</td>
<td>एभि:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>आनन ज्</td>
<td>आभ्याम्</td>
<td>एभि:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case 4</th>
<th>अस्मैः</th>
<th>आभ्याम्</th>
<th>एभ्यः</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>अस्मैः</td>
<td>आभ्याम्</td>
<td>एभ्यः</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>आना ज्</td>
<td>आभ्याम्</td>
<td>एभ्यः</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case 5</th>
<th>अस्मात्</th>
<th>आभ्याम्</th>
<th>एभ्यः</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>अस्मात्</td>
<td>आभ्याम्</td>
<td>एभ्यः</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>आना ज्</td>
<td>आभ्याम्</td>
<td>एभ्यः</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case 6</th>
<th>अस्य</th>
<th>अनयोः</th>
<th>एष्मः</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>अस्य</td>
<td>अनयोः</td>
<td>एष्मः</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>आना ज्</td>
<td>अनयोः</td>
<td>एष्मः</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case 7</th>
<th>अस्मिन्</th>
<th>अनयोः</th>
<th>एषु</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>अस्मिन्</td>
<td>अनयोः</td>
<td>एषु</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>आना ज्</td>
<td>अनयोः</td>
<td>एषु</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Feminine:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case 1</th>
<th>इयम्</th>
<th>इमें</th>
<th>इमान्</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>iyam</td>
<td>ime</td>
<td>imāḥ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case 2</td>
<td>इमाम्</td>
<td>इमें</td>
<td>इमान्</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>imām</td>
<td>ime</td>
<td>imāḥ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case 3</td>
<td>अनया</td>
<td>आभ्याम्</td>
<td>आभिनः</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anayā</td>
<td>ābhyām</td>
<td>ābhīḥ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case 4</td>
<td>अस्येः</td>
<td>आभ्याम्</td>
<td>आभ्यः</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>asyai</td>
<td>ābhyām</td>
<td>ābhyaḥ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case 5</td>
<td>अस्या:</td>
<td>आभ्याम्</td>
<td>आभ्यः</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>asyāḥ</td>
<td>ābhyām</td>
<td>ābhyaḥ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case 6</td>
<td>अस्या:</td>
<td>अनयो:</td>
<td>आसाम्</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>asyāḥ</td>
<td>anayoḥ</td>
<td>āsām</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case 7</td>
<td>अस्याम्</td>
<td>अनयो:</td>
<td>आसु</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>asyām</td>
<td>anayoḥ</td>
<td>āsu</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Neuter:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case 1</th>
<th>इदम्</th>
<th>इमें</th>
<th>इमानि</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>idam</td>
<td>ime</td>
<td>imānī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case 2</td>
<td>इदम्</td>
<td>इमें</td>
<td>इमानि</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>idam</td>
<td>ime</td>
<td>imānī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**adas**

Masculine:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Dual</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>असौ (asau)</td>
<td>अमू (amū)</td>
<td>अमी (amī)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>अमुम् (amum)</td>
<td>अमू (amū)</td>
<td>अमून् (amūn)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>अमुना (amunā)</td>
<td>अमूयाम् (amūbhyaṃ)</td>
<td>अमीभि: (amibhiḥ)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>अमुष्मै (amuṣmai)</td>
<td>अमूयाम् (amūbhyaṃ)</td>
<td>अमीभ्यः (amibhyāḥ)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>अमुष्मात् (amuṣmāt)</td>
<td>अमूयाम् (amūbhyaṃ)</td>
<td>अमीभ्यः (amibhyāḥ)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>अमुष्य (amusya)</td>
<td>अमुयो: (amuyoh)</td>
<td>अमीषाम् (amīṣām)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>अमुष्मिन् (amusmin)</td>
<td>अमुयो: (amuyoh)</td>
<td>अमीषु (amīṣu)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Feminine:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Dual</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>asau</td>
<td>amū</td>
<td>amūḥ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>amūm</td>
<td>amū</td>
<td>amūḥ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>amuyā</td>
<td>amūḥyām</td>
<td>amūḥyāh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>amuṣyai</td>
<td>amūḥyām</td>
<td>amūḥyāh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>amuṣyāḥ</td>
<td>amūḥyām</td>
<td>amūḥyāh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>amuṣyāḥ</td>
<td>amuyoḥ</td>
<td>amūṣam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>amuṣyām</td>
<td>amuyoḥ</td>
<td>amūṣu</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Neuter:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Dual</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>adaḥ</td>
<td>amū</td>
<td>amūṇi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>adaḥ</td>
<td>amū</td>
<td>amūṇi</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
kim and yad
Also known as: interrogative and relative pronouns

The two pronouns *kim* and *yad* let us create different kinds of complex sentences. In this lesson, we will learn more about what kinds of endings these pronouns use.

If you want to focus more on what these pronouns mean and less on their specific endings, see our *Sentences* topic.

**kim**

*Kim* means “who?” or “what?” We use *kim* to ask questions:

कस्म त्वम्।
*Kas* tvam.
Who are you?

त्वं कस्मै फलां ददासि
*Tvam* kasmai phalaṁ dadaśi
To whom are you giving the fruit?

कस्मात् रावणः सीताम् इच्छति।
*Kasmāt* rāvaṇah stītam icchati.
For what reason (from what) does Ravana want Sita?

*Kim* uses the same endings as *tad*, but its neuter singular form in cases 1 and 2 is *kim*:

किम् एतत्?
*Kim* etat?
What is this?

Also, the masculine case 1 singular (*kaḥ*) uses normal sandhi rules. Compare the results below:
क: योध: → को योध:
kah yodhaḥ → ko yodhaḥ
Who is a warrior?

स: योध: → स योध:
sah yodhaḥ → sa yodhaḥ
He is a warrior.

Just for reference, here are the forms of *kim* in the masculine gender:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Dual</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Case 1</td>
<td>क:</td>
<td>को:</td>
<td>के:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>kah</td>
<td>kau</td>
<td>ke</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case 2</td>
<td>कम्</td>
<td>को:</td>
<td>कान्</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>kam</td>
<td>kau</td>
<td>kān</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case 3</td>
<td>केन</td>
<td>काभ्याम्</td>
<td>केन:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>kena</td>
<td>kābhyām</td>
<td>kaiḥ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case 4</td>
<td>कस्में</td>
<td>काभ्याम्</td>
<td>केभ्यः</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>kasmēi</td>
<td>kābhyām</td>
<td>kebhyaḥ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case 5</td>
<td>कस्मात्</td>
<td>काभ्याम्</td>
<td>केभ्यः</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>kasmāt</td>
<td>kābhyām</td>
<td>kebhyaḥ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case 6</td>
<td>कस्य</td>
<td>कयो:</td>
<td>केषाम्</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>kasya</td>
<td>kayoh</td>
<td>keśām</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case 7</td>
<td>कस्मिन्</td>
<td>कयो:</td>
<td>केषु</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>kasmin</td>
<td>kayoh</td>
<td>keṣu</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

the feminine gender:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case 1</th>
<th>Case 2</th>
<th>Case 3</th>
<th>Case 4</th>
<th>Case 5</th>
<th>Case 6</th>
<th>Case 7</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ना kā</td>
<td>ना ज् kām</td>
<td>ना कया kāya</td>
<td>ना kasyai</td>
<td>ना kasyāḥ</td>
<td>ना kasyāḥ</td>
<td>ना kasyām</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ते ke</td>
<td>ते ke</td>
<td>ते kābhyaṃ</td>
<td>ते kābhyaṃ</td>
<td>ते kābhyaḥ</td>
<td>ते kābhyaḥ</td>
<td>ते kāsām</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>नाष्णः kāḥ</td>
<td>नाष्णः kāḥ</td>
<td>नाभष्णः kābhiḥ</td>
<td>नाभष्णः kābhyaḥ</td>
<td>नाभष्णः kābhyaḥ</td>
<td>नाभष्णः kāsām</td>
<td>नाभष्णः kāsām</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

and the neuter gender:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case 1</th>
<th>Case 2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ज्ञ kīm</td>
<td>ज्ञ kīm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ते ke</td>
<td>ते ke</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>नान kāni</td>
<td>नान kāni</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Dual</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case 1</th>
<th>Case 2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>किम् kim</td>
<td>किम् kim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>के ke</td>
<td>के ke</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>कानि kāni</td>
<td>कानि kāni</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
-cit and -cana

We can use the suffixes -cit and cana to create a word that means “someone” or “something”:

क: पृच्छति → कश्चि पृच्छति
kah pṛcchati → kaścit pṛcchati
Who is asking? → Someone is asking.

केन श्रुतम् → केनचन श्रुतम्
kena śrutam → kenacana śrutam
By whom was it heard? → By someone it was heard.

yad

yad means “who” or “what,” but not in the sense of asking a question. Rather, yad lets us join sentences together.

This idea is difficult to explain but easy to understand. In the examples below, the first two sentences are simple. Then we use yad to connect them.

सा पृच्छति।
sā pṛcchati.
She asks.

सा रामस्य पत्नी।
sā rāmasya patnī.
She is Rama’s wife.

या पृच्छति सा रामस्य पत्नी।
yā pṛcchati sā rāmasya patnī.
Who asks, she is Rama’s wife. (literal translation)
The person who asks is Rama’s wife. (natural translation) (Note that we pair yad with another pronoun here.)

We can create more complex examples too:
राम: तस्येन फलं ददाति।
rāmaḥ tasyai phalāṃ dadāti.
Rama gives a fruit to her.

सा रामस्य पत्नी।
sā rāmasya patnī.
She is Rama's wife.

यस्य राम: फलं ददाति सा रामस्य पत्नी
yasyai rāmaḥ phalāṃ dadāti sā rāmasya patnī
to whom Rama gives a fruit, she is Rama's wife. (literal)
The person to whom Rama gives a fruit is Rama's wife. (natural)

And even more complex examples:

राम: तस्येन फलं ददाति।
rāmaḥ tasyai phalāṃ dadāti.
Rama gives a fruit to her.

तस्या: पिता जनकः
tasyāḥ pitā janakaḥ
Her father is Janaka.

यस्य राम: फलं ददाति तस्या: पिता जनकः
yasyai rāmaḥ phalāṃ dadāti tasyāḥ pitā janakaḥ
to whom Rama gives a fruit, her father is Janaka. (literal)
The father of the one to whom Rama gives a fruit is Janaka. (natural)

yad uses the same endings as tad, but it follows normal sandhi rules. Here are the forms of yad with masculine endings:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case 1</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Dual</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ष्णः</td>
<td>यः</td>
<td>यः</td>
<td>यें</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yah</td>
<td>yau</td>
<td>ye</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case 2</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Dual</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ज्ञ</td>
<td>यम्</td>
<td>यो</td>
<td>यान्</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yam</td>
<td>yau</td>
<td>yān</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case 3</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Dual</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>येन</td>
<td>येन</td>
<td>येन</td>
<td>yaiḥ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yena</td>
<td>yābhyaṃ</td>
<td>yaiḥ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case 4</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Dual</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>यस्मै</td>
<td>याब्याम्</td>
<td>यैभ्यः</td>
<td>yebhyah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yasmāi</td>
<td>yābhyaṃ</td>
<td>yebhyah</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case 5</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Dual</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>यस्मात्</td>
<td>याब्याम्</td>
<td>यैभ्यः</td>
<td>yebhyah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yasmāt</td>
<td>yābhyaṃ</td>
<td>yebhyah</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case 6</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Dual</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>यस्य</td>
<td>ययोः</td>
<td>येषाम्</td>
<td>yesām</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yasya</td>
<td>yayoh</td>
<td>yesām</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case 7</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Dual</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>यस्मिन्</td>
<td>ययोः</td>
<td>येषु</td>
<td>yesu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yasmin</td>
<td>yayoh</td>
<td>yesu</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

feminine endings:
| Case 1 | Singular | या | ये | या: |
|        | Dual     | yā | ye | yah |
| Case 2 | याम्     | ye | yāḥ |
| Case 3 | याया     | याभयाम् | याभिः |
|        | यायाम् | yābhīḥ |
| Case 4 | यस्याई  | याभयाम् | याभ्य |
|        | यायाभ्याम् | yābhyyāḥ |
| Case 5 | यस्याई:  | याभयाम् | याभ्य |
|        | यायाभ्याम् | yābhyyāḥ |
| Case 6 | यस्याई:  | याभयाम् | यासाम् |
|        | यायाभ्याम् | yāsām |
| Case 7 | यस्याम्  | याभयाम् | यासु |
|        | यासाम् | yāsu |

and neuter endings:

| Case 1 | Singular | यत् | ये | यानि |
|        | Dual     | yat | ye | yāni |
| Case 2 | यत्     | ye | yāni |
Review

kim and yad can be used in complex and sophisticated ways. For details, see our Sentences topic.
Pronominal adjectives

There are many adjectives that use the same endings as pronouns like *tad*. We can call these adjectives **pronominal adjectives** since they are adjectives that behave like pronouns.

Here are some common examples:

- पूर्व → पूर्वस्मिन् दिने
  
  *pūrva* → *pūrvasmin* *dine*

  previous → on the previous day

- पर → परस्मिन् दिने
  
  *para* → *parasmin* *dine*

  next → on the next day

- एक → एकस्मिन् दिने
  
  *eka* → *ekasmin* *dine*

  one → on a certain day

- अन्य → अन्यस्मिन् दिने
  
  *anya* → *anyasmin* *dine*

  other → on another day

- सर्व → सर्वेनाराः
  
  *sarva* → *sarve narāḥ*

  all → all men

- विश्वे → विश्वे देवाः
  
  *viśve* → *viśve devāḥ*

  all → all gods

But there is one small exception. Apart from *anya* and a few rarer stems, all of these pronominal adjectives use *-m* in the neuter singular of cases 1 and 2:
एकम् फलम्

ekam phalam
one fruit

सर्वं उदकम्

sarvam udakam
all the water

अन्यत् फलम्

anyat phalam
another fruit
Number words

Number words are adjectives that imply a specific number of items:

प्रक्ष पाण्डवाः:
pañca pāṇḍavāḥ
the five sons of Pandu

Sanskrit's number words generally follow the patterns of the stems we have seen already. Many of these number words are the same regardless of the gender of the noun they describe:

प्रक्ष पाण्डवाः:
pañca pāṇḍavāḥ
the five sons of Pandu (masculine)

प्रक्ष फलानि
pañca phalāni
five fruits (neuter)

प्रक्ष नद्यः:
pañca nadyaḥ
five rivers (feminine)

In this lesson, we'll learn about Sanskrit's number words and how to use them.

eka

eka ("one") uses the normal pronoun endings. When eka refers to one item, it uses the singular. But eka can also be used in the sense of "a small number" or "a few" of something. When eka has this meaning, it is used in the dual and plural.

Here are the forms of eka in the masculine gender:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Dual</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>एकः (ekaḥ)</td>
<td>एकां (ekau)</td>
<td>एक (eke)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>एकम् (ekam)</td>
<td>एकां (ekau)</td>
<td>एकान् (ekān)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>एकेन (ekena)</td>
<td>एकाभ्याम् (ekābhyām)</td>
<td>एकैष्णः (ekaiḥ)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>एकस्मै (ekasmai)</td>
<td>एकाभ्याम् (ekābhyām)</td>
<td>एकैष्णः (ekaiḥ)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>एकस्मात् (ekasmāt)</td>
<td>एकाभ्याम् (ekābhyām)</td>
<td>एकेभ्यः (ekēbhyaḥ)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>एकस्य (ekasya)</td>
<td>एकायोः (ekayoh)</td>
<td>एकानाम् (ekānām)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>एकस्मिन् (ekasmin)</td>
<td>एकायोः (ekayoh)</td>
<td>एकेशु (ekēsu)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**dvi**

*dvi* ("two") is used only in the dual. The stem *dvi* is used in compounds and certain suffixes, but when we add endings, we actually use the stem *dva* stem (or *dvā* for the feminine) instead.

Here are the masculine endings for *dvi*:
| Case 1 | द्वाँ | — |
| Case 2 | द्वाँ | — |
| Case 3 | द्वाभ्याम् | — |
| Case 4 | द्वाभ्याम् | — |
| Case 5 | द्वाभ्याम् | — |
| Case 6 | द्वयोः | — |
| Case 7 | द्वयोः | — |

**tri**

*tri* is always used in the plural. In the masculine, it uses the normal -i stem endings, except that the case 6 plural is *trayānām*: 
| Case 1 | — | — | त्रष्णः  
|        |   |   | trayāḥ |
| Case 2 | — | — | त्रीन्  
|        |   |   | trīn |
| Case 3 | — | — | त्रभष्णः  
|        |   |   | tribhiḥ |
| Case 4 | — | — | त्रभ्यः  
|        |   |   | tribhyāḥ |
| Case 5 | — | — | त्रभ्यः  
|        |   |   | tribhyāḥ |
| Case 6 | — | — | त्रयाणाम्  
|        |   |   | trayāṇām |
| Case 7 | — | — | त्रिषु  
|        |   |   | triṣu |
| Case 8 | — | — | त्रयः  
|        |   |   | trayāḥ |

The feminine form of *tri* uses the stem *tisṛ* with the basic nominal endings. But in the case 6 plural, it uses the ending -ṇām instead:
| Case 1 | — | — | तिस्रः: tisraḥ |
| Case 2 | — | — | तिस्रः: tisraḥ |
| Case 3 | — | — | तिस्रभिः: tisṛbhiḥ |
| Case 4 | — | — | तिस्रभ्यः: tisṛbhyaḥ |
| Case 5 | — | — | तिस्रभ्यः: tisṛbhyaḥ |
| Case 6 | — | — | तिस्रणाम्: tisṛnām |
| Case 7 | — | — | तिस्रसु: tisṛsu |
| Case 8 | — | — | तिस्रः: tisraḥ |

Finally, the neuter follows the usual pattern of the -i stems:
catur

catur (“four”) uses the strong stem catvār in cases 1 and 8. Otherwise, it generally uses the basic nominal endings:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Dual</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>चत्वारः: catvāraḥ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>चतुरः: caturaḥ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>चतुर्भिः: caturbhiḥ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>चतुर्भ्यः: caturbhyah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>चतुर्भ्यः: caturbhyah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>चतुर्णामः: caturṇām</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>चतुर्षु: caturṣu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>चत्वारः: catvāraḥ</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In the feminine, *catur* uses the feminine stem *catasṛ*. This stem is used like *tisṛ* above:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Dual</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Case 1   | —    | —      | चतस्रः  
catasraḥ |
| Case 2   | —    | —      | चतस्रः  
catasraḥ |
| Case 3   | —    | —      | चतस्र्भिः  
catasṛbhiḥ |
| Case 4   | —    | —      | चतस्र्भ्यः  
catasṛbhyah |
| Case 5   | —    | —      | चतस्र्भ्यः  
catasṛbhyah |
| Case 6   | —    | —      | चतस्र्णाम्  
catasṛṇām |
| Case 7   | —    | —      | चतस्र्षु  
catasṛṣu |
| Case 8   | —    | —      | चतस्रः  
catasraḥ |

The neuter endings are below. In this neuter form, we lengthen the last vowel of the stem, but we don't insert a new nasal sound:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case 1</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Dual</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>चत्वारि</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>catvāri</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case 2</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Dual</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>चत्वारि</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>catvāri</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case 8</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Dual</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>चत्वारि</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>catvāri</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**pañcan to daśan**

The numbers *pañcan* (“five”) to *daśan* (“ten”) use the same forms regardless of gender.

The forms of *pañca* (“five”) are below. The stems *saptan* (“seven”), *navan* (“nine”), and *daśan* (“ten”) all follow the same pattern as *pañcan*:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Dual</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>पञ्चा</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>pañca</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>पञ्चा</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>pañca</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>पञ्चब्क्षणः</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>pañcabhiḥ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>पञ्चब्ध्यः</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>pañcabhyaḥ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>पञ्चब्ध्यः</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>pañcabhyaḥ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>पञ्चानामः</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>pañcānām</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>पञ्चसु</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>pañcasu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>पञ्चा</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>pañca</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

`sāś` ("six") follows a similar pattern, but the last `ś` of `sāś` causes many sandhi changes:
aṣṭa ("eight") also follows a similar pattern, but it has some optional forms that are more irregular:
| Case 1 |  |  | अष्ट, अष्टौ |
| Case 2 |  |  | अष्ट, अष्टौ |
| Case 3 |  |  | अष्टभष्णः, अष्टभष्णः |
| Case 4 |  |  | अष्टभ्यः, अष्टभ्यः |
| Case 5 |  |  | अष्टभ्यः, अष्टभ्यः |
| Case 6 |  |  | अष्टानाम् |
| Case 7 |  |  | अष्टसु, अष्टसु |
| Case 8 |  |  | अष्ट, अष्टौ |

**ekādaśa to navadaśa**

You can see the numbers 11 to 19 in the examples below. All of them use the same endings as daśa:

एकादशा

*ekādaśa*

eleven
नाश
dvādaśa
twelve

चतुर्दशा
trayodaśa
thirteen

चतुर्दशा
caturdaśa
fourteen

पञ्चदशा
pañcadaśa
fifteen

षोडशा
ṣoḍaśa
sixteen

सप्तदशा
saptadaśa
seventeen

अष्टदशा
aṣṭādaśa
eighteen

नवदशा
navadaśa
nineteen

viṃśati to navati

All of the numbers below are used in the feminine singular:
विन्यातिः
vimśatīḥ
twenty

त्रिन्यात्
trimśat
thirty

चत्रारिण्यात्
catvārimśat
forty

पञ्चाशात्
paṅcāśat
fifty

षष्टिः
ṣaṣṭiḥ
sixty

सप्ताशात्
saptatiḥ
seventy

अष्टिः
aṣṭiḥ
eighty

नवाशात्
navatiḥ
ninety

śata to koṭi

All of these numbers are used in the singular. All of these stems are neuter, except for koṭi, which is feminine.


शतम्
satam
one hundred

सहस्रम्
sahasram
one thousand

अयुतम्
ayutam
ten thousand

लक्षम्
lakṣam
one hundred thousand (i.e. one lakh)

प्रयुतम्
prayutam
one million

कोटिः
koṭih
ten million (i.e. one crore)
Verbs 1: Special tense-moods
Special tense-moods

In the core lessons, we learned that we can change a verb root into a verb stem. And once we have a verb stem, we can add endings to that stem to create a complete verb.

In the examples below, note the progression from root to stem to verb:

नरी → नय → नयन्ति
$nī → naya → nayanti$
lead → lead → They lead.

नरी → नेष्य → नेष्यामि
$nī → nesya → nesyāmi$
lead → will lead → I will lead.

We also learned that Sanskrit verbs express five basic kinds of information. These five are called person, which expresses the verb's perspective:

नयति।
nayati.
(Someone) leads.

नयामि।
nayāmi.
I lead.

number, which expresses how many of something there are:

नयति।
nayati.
(Someone) leads.

नयन्ति।
nayanti.
They lead.
tense-mood, which expresses the verb’s tense (time period) and mood (manner):

नयति।
nayati.
(Someone) leads.

नेष्यति।
nesyati.
(Someone) will lead.

नयेत।
nayet.
(Someone) might lead.

prayoga, which is hard to explain but easy to understand:

नयति।
nayati.
(Someone) leads.

(kartari prayoga)

नीयते
niyate
(Someone) is led.

(karmani prayoga)

and pada, which is meaningful only for certain roots. We will discuss pada more in a later lesson, but here is a simple example of it:

नयति।
nayati.
(Someone) leads (for another's benefit).

(parasmaipada)


**Four special tense-moods**

Let's focus on tense-moods here. Sanskrit uses ten different tense-moods. But four of these tense-moods use very similar stems in *kartari prayoga*. You can see all four of these tense-moods below:

- नयति
  
  *nayati*
  
  (Someone) leads.

- नयतु
  
  *nayatu*
  
  (Someone) should lead.

- अनयत्
  
  *anayat*
  
  (Someone) led.

- नयेत्
  
  *nayet*
  
  (Someone) might or could lead.

Since these four tense-moods use a special stem, they are sometimes called **special tense-moods**. They are called “special” only because of the stem they use. Otherwise, they are like any other verb.

**Ten stem patterns**

We form the stems for these four special tense-moods in *ten different patterns*. Generally, each root uses just one of these ten patterns.

The most common pattern is that we strengthen the root vowel and add -*a*:
नी → नयति, नयतु, अनयतु, नयेत्

नी → nayati, nayatu, anayat, nayet
lead → (someone) leads, should lead, led, might lead

For other roots, we might add a suffix like -aya instead:

चुर् → चोरयति, चोरयतु, अचोरयतु, चोरयेत्

cur → corayati, corayatu, acorayat, corayet
steal → (someone) steals, should steal, stole, might steal

And for a few roots, we might even make a more drastic change:

हु → जुहोति, जुहोतु, अजुहोत, जुहुयात्

hu → juhoti, juhotu, ajuhot, juhuyāt
offer → (someone) offers, should offer, offered, might offer

Since roots change in ten different ways, we can sort these roots into ten different verb classes. Each verb class has its own characteristic change.

In this topic, we will learn about verb classes and the four special tense-moods that use them.

**Review**

1. How many special tense-moods are there?
2. How many verb classes are there?
The present tense

Also known as: the present indicative, vartamānaḥ (“occurring”), laṭ

The first tense-mood we will study is the present tense. Traditionally, this is the first tense-mood that Sanskrit students learn.

Basic meaning

The present tense has different meanings in different contexts. Most commonly, it what is happening right now:

नयति।

*nayati.*

(Someone) leads or is leading.

चरति।

*carati.*

(Someone) walks or is walking.

Notice that the English translation of *nayati* is either “leads” or “is leading.” In Sanskrit, we describe both of these with the same verb form. Context makes the specific sense clear.

In general, the present tense is seen as a “default” tense. So we can also use it to describe actions that regularly occur:

अहं प्रतिदिन पचामि।

*aḥaṃ pratidinaṃ pacāmi.*

I cook every day.

संजयः प्रतिवर्षं नगरं गच्छति।

*sāṃjayaḥ prativarṣaṃ nagaraṃ gacchati.*

Sanjaya goes to the city every year.

The present tense also expresses actions that have just finished:
When did you come to the village?
(It is implied that the person has come very recently.)

or are just about to occur:

I (am just about to) go to the forest.

In the first person, it can also have the sense of “let’s”:

Let's (all) go.

Let's (both) ask the king.

We can modify the basic sense of the present tense with various uninflected words. One common example is that we can use *sma* to express past action:

The lion lived (or, was living) in the cave.

**Endings**

Here are the endings we use in the present tense. The examples below use the stem *naya*:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Dual</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3rd</td>
<td>नयाति nayati</td>
<td>नयतः  nayataḥ</td>
<td>नयन्ति nayanti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd</td>
<td>नयासि nayasi</td>
<td>नयथः  nayathaḥ</td>
<td>नयथ nayatha</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1st</td>
<td>नयामि nayāmi</td>
<td>नयावः  nayāvaḥ</td>
<td>नयामः nayāmaḥ</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The table above has three rows and three columns. Each row corresponds to a different person, and you can see these persons labeled on the left-hand side. Each column corresponds to a different number, and you can see these numbers labeled on the top. For example, we can use this table to learn that the “3rd person singular” form is nayati.

Why do we put these words in a table? It’s not so that we can sit down and memorize these forms. In our view, that’s a waste of time. Mainly, a table lets us see certain patterns clearly.

Here are some patterns that stand out to us:

- All of the first-person forms have a long ā sound in their ending.
- All of the singular forms end in -i.
- The sound tha is used only in the second person.

**Review**

The present tense is simple and straightforward. In the next lesson, we will learn about the command mood, which uses similar endings to the present tense.
The command mood
Also known as: the imperative mood, अजिः (“command”), लोत

The present tense and the command mood use similar endings. So, let’s learn about the command mood next.

Basic meaning

The command mood is used for commands. We commonly see the command mood in the second person:

नय
naya
Lead!

नयत
nayata
(You all) lead!

But in other persons, the command mood has many more subtle meanings. In the third person, it can have the sense of a suggestion, a demand, or a request:

रामो वनं गच्छतु।
rāmo vanam gacchatu.
Rama could go to the forest. (suggestion)
Send Rama to the forest. (demand or request)

The command mood is rarely used in the first person. When it is used, it usually has the sense of fulfilling another’s need:

किः करवाणि तेः?
kim karavāṇi te?
What may I do for you?

Endings

Here are the endings of the command mood as used with the stem naya:
Let's take a moment to compare these endings to the ones used in the present tense. Notice that the first-person endings still use a long ā. There are other similarities as well: nayati is replaced by nayatu, and nayanti by nayantu.

But there are also some major differences. In particular, notice these five endings:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>1st</th>
<th>Dual</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3rd</td>
<td>nayāni</td>
<td>nayatam</td>
<td>nayāma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd</td>
<td>naya</td>
<td>nayatam</td>
<td>nayata</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1st</td>
<td>nayāma</td>
<td>nayatam</td>
<td>nayama</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

These five endings will repeat in the next two tense-moods.
The ordinary past tense

Also known as: the imperfect, anadyatana-bhūta (“past action not of today”), laṅ

Basic meaning

The ordinary past tense technically refers to past actions that occurred before today. But in practice, it refers to any past action:

रामो लङ्काम अगच्छत्।
rāmo lankām agacchat.
Rama went to Lanka.

रामः सीताम अपश्यत्।
rāmaḥ sitām apaśyat.
Rama saw Sita.

Note the a- at the beginning of each verb:

गच्छति → अगच्छत्
gacchati → agacchat
goes → went

Many of the tense-moods that describe past events will add this a- sound to the beginning of the stem.

Endings

Here are the endings of the ordinary past tense as used with the stem naya:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Dual</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3rd</td>
<td>अनयत्</td>
<td>अनयताम्</td>
<td>अनयन्</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>anayat</td>
<td>anayatām</td>
<td>anayan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd</td>
<td>अनयः</td>
<td>अनयताम्</td>
<td>अनयत</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>anayah</td>
<td>anayatam</td>
<td>anayata</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1st</td>
<td>अनयम्</td>
<td>अनयाव</td>
<td>अनयाम</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>anayam</td>
<td>anayāva</td>
<td>anayāma</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notice that many of these endings are shortened versions of the present tense endings. Endings that end with -i lose that -i:

नयति → अनयत्

*nayati* → anayat

नयसि → अनयः

*nayasi* → anayah

नयामि → अनयम्

*nayāmi* → anayam

नयान्ति → अनयन्

*nayanti* → anayan

And endings that end with the *visarga* lose that *visarga*:

नयावः → अनयाव

*nayāvah* → anayāva

नयामः → अनयाम

*nayāmah* → anayāma

**Using verb prefixes**

If the verb uses a verb prefix, we add that prefix *before* the *a-*:
Why does this happen? In early Sanskrit, verb prefixes were ordinary uninflected words that could occur anywhere in the sentence. Here is a simple example:

प ना ज्  अगच्छ ज् ।
pari grāmam agacchat.
He went around the village.

In later Sanskrit, however, these words are almost always placed just before the verb. And over time, they were treated as a single word:

प अगच्छ ज्
pari agacchat → paryagacchat.
The potential mood

Also known as: the optative, *vidhiḥ* (“injunction”), *vidhiliṅ*

The potential mood is the last of the four special tense-moods.

**Basic meaning**

The potential mood usually describes what might, could, or should happen:

रामः वनम् गच्छेत।

*rāmaḥ vanam gacchet.*

Rama might go to the forest.

The potential mood can express many different meanings based on the context. For example, it can show what someone is capable of doing:

अहम् इदं वनं सर्वं दहेयम्।

*aḥam idaṃ vanam sarvam daheyam.*

I could burn all of this forest.

It can be a soft command:

त्वम् इदं खादे।

*tvam idaṃ khādeḥ.*

You should eat this.

And there are other subtle uses as well.

**Endings**

The endings we use with the potential mood are almost identical to the endings of the ordinary past tense. There are two main differences. The first difference is that we add an extra -ī sound before every ending:
And the second is that the third-person plural ending is -uḥ instead of -an:

अनयन्।
anayan.
They led.

नयेयुः।
nayeyuh.
They might lead.

Here is how these endings appear when used with a stem like naya:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Dual</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3rd</td>
<td>नयेत्</td>
<td>नयेताम्</td>
<td>नयेयुः</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>nayet</td>
<td>nayetām</td>
<td>nayeyuh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd</td>
<td>नयेशः</td>
<td>नयेतम्</td>
<td>नयेत</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>nayeḥ</td>
<td>nayetam</td>
<td>nayeta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1st</td>
<td>नयेयम्</td>
<td>नयेव</td>
<td>नयेम</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>nayeyam</td>
<td>nayeva</td>
<td>nayema</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note the sandhi between the stem and the ending here:
नय + ईत् → नयेत्
naya + it → nayet
(someone) might, could, or should lead
ātmanepada
Also known as: the middle voice

In the previous lesson, we focused on the parasmaipada endings used by the four special tense-moods. In this lesson, we will focus on the ātmanepada endings.

What is ātmanepada?

Sanskrit has two different sets of verb endings: parasmaipada endings and ātmanepada endings. Some roots always use parasmaipada endings, some roots always use ātmanepada endings, and some roots can use both.

For a small number of roots, ātmanepada endings imply that the person performing the action is doing so for their own benefit. Here is the classic example:

देवदत्त ओदनम् पचति।
Devadatta odanam pacati.  
Devadatta cooks rice (for others).

dेवदत्त ओदनम् पचते।
Devadatta odanam pacate.  
Devadatta cooks rice (for himself).

In older Sanskrit, this distinction is more meaningful. But in later Sanskrit, there is little to no difference in meaning between these two sets of endings.

The present tense

Here are the ātmanepada endings of the present tense:
First, notice that all of these endings end in -e in the present tense. Also, notice that many of these endings are similar to their *parasmaipada* counterparts. Here are the similar forms:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Dual</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3rd</td>
<td>नयते</td>
<td>नयेते</td>
<td>नयन्ते</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>nayate</em></td>
<td><em>nayete</em></td>
<td><em>nayante</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd</td>
<td>नयसे</td>
<td>नयेथे</td>
<td>नयध्वे</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>nayase</em></td>
<td><em>nayethe</em></td>
<td><em>nayadhve</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1st</td>
<td>नये</td>
<td>नयावहे</td>
<td>नयामहे</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>naye</em></td>
<td><em>nayāvahe</em></td>
<td><em>nayāmahe</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**The command mood**

Here are the endings for the command mood:
As before, focus on these five endings, which the next two tense-moods will mostly reuse:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>3rd</th>
<th>2nd</th>
<th>1st</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>S</td>
<td>नयताम्  nayatām</td>
<td>नयस्व nayasva</td>
<td>नयै  nayai</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>नयेताम्  nayetām</td>
<td>नयेथाम् nayethām</td>
<td>नयावहै nayāvahai</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P</td>
<td>नयन्ताम्  nayantām</td>
<td>नयध्वम् nayadhvam</td>
<td>नयामहै nayāmahai</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The ordinary past tense

As before, the forms of the ordinary past tense have an \( a \)-prefix:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Dual</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3rd</td>
<td>अनयत (anayata)</td>
<td>अनयेताम् (anayetām)</td>
<td>अनयन्त (anayanta)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>अनयथा: (anayathāḥ)</td>
<td>अनयेथाम् (anayethām)</td>
<td>अनयध्वम् (anayadhvam)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd</td>
<td>अनये (anaye)</td>
<td>अनयावहि (anayāvahi)</td>
<td>अनयामहि (anayāmahi)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>अनयेवह (anayevahi)</td>
<td>अनयेवह (anayevahi)</td>
<td>अनयेवह (anayevahi)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1st</td>
<td>अनयेवह (anayevahi)</td>
<td>अनयेवह (anayevahi)</td>
<td>अनयेवह (anayevahi)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The first person uses the endings -vahi and -mahi instead of the -vahai and -mahai used above.

**The potential mood**

As before, the potential mood uses nearly the same endings as the ordinary past tense. And as before, all of these endings start with -t:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Dual</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3rd</td>
<td>नयेत (nayeta)</td>
<td>नयेयाताम् (nayeyātām)</td>
<td>नयेरत् (nayerat)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>नयेवह (nayevahi)</td>
<td>नयेवह (nayevahi)</td>
<td>नयेवह (nayevahi)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd</td>
<td>नयेह (nayeḥ)</td>
<td>नयेयाथाम् (nayeyāthām)</td>
<td>नयेध्वम् (nayedhvam)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>नयेवह (nayevah)</td>
<td>नयेवह (nayevah)</td>
<td>नयेवह (nayevah)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1st</td>
<td>नयेया (nayeya)</td>
<td>नयेवहि (nayevahi)</td>
<td>नयेमहि (nayemahi)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

As before, the one exception is the third-person plural ending:

अनयन्त।

anayanta.

They led.
Review

1. In later Sanskrit, is there a strong difference in meaning between \textit{parasmaipada} and \textit{ātmanepada} endings?
The *bhū*, *div*, *tud*, and *cur* classes

We have learned that there are four special tense-moods and that we create stems for these special tense-moods in ten different patterns. We can sort all verb roots into ten different lists based on which pattern they use. These lists are called **verb classes**.

Four of these verb classes are quite simple to create and use:

- **भमू → भव**
  - *bhū → bhava*
  - *be, become → (someone) is or becomes*

- **दिव् → दीव्य**
  - *div → divya*
  - *gamble → (someone) gambles*

- **तुद् → तुद्**
  - *tud → tuda*
  - *strike (someone) strikes*

- **चर् → चोर्य**
  - *cur → coraya*
  - *steal (someone) steals*

Let’s call these four classes the **simple verb classes**. Each class is named after the first root in its list.

**The bhū class**

The **bhū class** is the largest of the ten verb classes and contains almost half of all verb roots. Here are some examples of this class:

- **भू → भवति**
  - *bhū → bhavati*
  - *be, become → (someone) is or becomes*
नी → नयति
nī → nayati
lead → (someone) leads

शुच् → शोचति
śuc → śocati
grieve → (someone) grieves

निन्द् → निन्दति
nind → nindati
deride → (someone) derides

जीव् → जीवति
jīv → jīvati
live → (someone) lives

For most roots in this class, we create a stem by strengthening the root vowel and adding the suffix -a. Here are some examples:

भू → भो + अ → भव
bhū → bho + a → bhava
become

नी → ने + अ → नय
nī → ne + a → naya
lead

शुच् → शोच् + अ → शोच
śuc → śoc + a → śoca
grieve

However, there are some roots that don't use a strengthened vowel. For example, roots whose vowel is a don't change:

हस् → हस
has → hasa
laugh
And if a root's syllable would be heavy even after we add -a, then we don't strengthen the root. Or to put it another way, there is no change if the root ends in multiple consonants:

निन्द्द् → निन्द
nind → ninda
blame

Or if the root has a long vowel followed by a consonant:

जीव् → जीव
jīv → jīva
live

There are also several roots that form their stems in an unpredictable way. Such stems are called irregular stems. Here are some common examples of irregular stems:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Root</th>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Basic meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>स्था</td>
<td>तिष्ठति</td>
<td>stand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sthā</td>
<td>tiṣṭhati</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>पा</td>
<td>पिबति</td>
<td>drink</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pā</td>
<td>pibati</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>दृश्</td>
<td>पश्यति</td>
<td>see</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drś</td>
<td>paśyati</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>गम्</td>
<td>गच्छति</td>
<td>go</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gam</td>
<td>gacchati</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The roots that use irregular stems are all common, and you will see and hear them many times as you engage with real Sanskrit content. So although you might be tempted to memorize these forms, you will acquire them naturally as you continue to read and listen to Sanskrit.
Why is the root \textit{dṛś}?

The ancient grammarians decided on verb roots by analyzing all of a verb's tense-moods and derived forms. Words like \textit{paśyati}, \textit{paśyet}, \textit{pasyatu}, and \textit{apaśyat} strongly suggest a root like \textit{paś}. But we must also consider words like \textit{drakṣyati} ("will see"), \textit{dadarśa} ("saw long ago"), \textit{adrākṣīt} ("saw"), \textit{drśyate} ("is seen"), and so on.

Given a choice between \textit{dṛś} and \textit{paś}, the grammarians chose \textit{dṛś} to represent these verbs. The specific reasons are complicated to explain right now. But the simple reason is \textit{dṛś} makes it easier to talk about certain general patterns in Sanskrit.

This same logic explains some of the other irregular roots above.

The \textit{div} class

For roots in the \textit{div class}, we form a stem by adding \textit{-ya} to the root. No vowel strengthening occurs:

\begin{align*}
\text{मुह्} & \rightarrow \text{मुह्य} \\
muh & \rightarrow muhya
\end{align*}

become confused

This class has a few irregular stems. Usually, these irregular stems lengthen the root's vowel. Here are a few examples:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Root</th>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Basic meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>दिव्</strong></td>
<td><strong>दीव्यति</strong></td>
<td>gamble</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>div</em></td>
<td><em>divyati</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>जन्</strong></td>
<td><strong>जायते</strong></td>
<td>be born</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>jan</em></td>
<td><em>jāyate</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>शम्</strong></td>
<td><strong>शाम्यति</strong></td>
<td>be tired or calm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>šam</em></td>
<td><em>šāmyati</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>मद्</strong></td>
<td><strong>माध्यति</strong></td>
<td>be intoxicated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>mad</em></td>
<td><em>mādyati</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**The *tud* class**

For roots in the *tud* class, we form a stem by adding -a to the root. No vowel strengthening occurs:

**यु ज्** → **यु**

*tud* → *tuda*

strike

The irregular stems in this class usually have an extra nasal sound:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Root</th>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Basic meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>मुच्</strong></td>
<td><strong>मुच्छ</strong></td>
<td>release</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>muc</em></td>
<td><em>muñca</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>कृत्</strong></td>
<td><strong>कृत्तिति</strong></td>
<td>cut</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>krt</em></td>
<td><em>krntati</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>लिप्त्</strong></td>
<td><strong>लिप्पति</strong></td>
<td>anoint or smear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>lip</em></td>
<td><em>limpati</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>सिच्</strong></td>
<td><strong>सिच्चति</strong></td>
<td>sprinkle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>sic</em></td>
<td><em>siñcati</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Why isn't *nind* in the *tud* class?

If *nind* doesn't strengthen its vowel, why isn’t it in the *tud* class? This is a great question. The answer ultimately has to do with different *vowel accents* in Sanskrit.

Old Sanskrit has a feature called *pitch accent*, where some vowels are spoken with a higher pitch than others. This pitch accent can still be heard in Vedic recitation.

The roots in the *tud* class generally have a high accent on their *-a* suffix, and the roots in the *bhū* class have a low accent. *nind* uses a low accent for this *-a* sound, so it in the *bhū* class.

The *cur* class

For most roots in the *cur* class, we create the stem by *strengthening* the root vowel and adding the suffix *-aya*. Here are some examples:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{चुरू} & \rightarrow \text{चोरय} \\
cur & \rightarrow \text{coraya} \\
\text{steal} & \rightarrow \text{(someone) steals} \\
\text{चिन्त्} & \rightarrow \text{चिन्तयति} \\
cint & \rightarrow \text{cintayati} \\
\text{think} & \rightarrow \text{(someone) thinks}
\end{align*}
\]

Notice that the stem of *cint* is *cintayati*, not *centayati*. (We use the * symbol to show that this word is not correct Sanskrit.) Since *cint* ends in multiple consonants, its vowel does not strengthen. So it behaves in the same way as *nindati* above.

The irregular stems in the *cur* class usually have extra sounds between the roots and the *-aya* suffix:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Root</th>
<th>Stem</th>
<th>Basic meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>प्री</td>
<td>प्रीणयति</td>
<td>please</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prī</td>
<td>prīṇayati</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>धू</td>
<td>धूनयति</td>
<td>shake</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dhū</td>
<td>dhūṇayati</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Review**

1. How do we usually make stems in the *bhū* class?
2. How do we usually make stems in the *div* class?
3. How do we usually make stems in the *tud* class?
4. How do we usually make stems in the *cur* class?
The su, tan, and krī classes

In the previous lesson, we learned about the four simple verb classes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Root</th>
<th>Stem</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>भू</td>
<td>भव</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bhū</td>
<td>bhava</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>दिव्</td>
<td>दीव्य</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>div</td>
<td>divya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>तुद्</td>
<td>तुद्र</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tud</td>
<td>tud</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>चूर्</td>
<td>चोरय</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cur</td>
<td>coraya</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The other six verb classes are more complex. Let’s call these six classes the complex verb classes for short.

In this lesson, we will study three of these classes: the su class, the tan class, and the krī class. First, we will learn how these classes form their stems. Then, we will learn how to use these stems with the endings of the four special tense-moods.

What makes a verb class complex?

Why are these classes called the complex verb class? First, their stems end in sounds other than -a. As a result, we might have to apply various sandhi changes to these stems and endings:

\[ \text{द्वे} + \text{ति} \rightarrow \text{द्वे} \text{ष्टि} \]
\[ dveṣ + ti \rightarrow dveṣṭi \]

hate \(\rightarrow\) (someone) hates

Second, their stems come in two different versions: a strong stem that is used with certain endings, and a weak ending that is used with the other endings:
Third, some of these classes use endings that differ from the endings we have seen already:

कृ → कुर्वते
kr → kurvate
They all make.
(Note that this is not *kurvante, as we might otherwise expect)

The su class

The su class uses two different stems. Its strong stem uses the suffix -no, and its weak stem uses the suffix -nu:

सु → सुनोति
su → sunoti
(Someone) presses out.

सु → सुन्वन्ति
su → sunvanti
They press out.

One of its important irregular verbs is śru (“hear”). Its strong stem is śrṇo, and its weak stem is śṛṇu:

श्रु → श्रणोति
śru → śṛṇoti
(Someone) hears.
They hear.

The \textit{tan} class

The \textbf{tan class} is just like the \textit{su} class. But instead of using \textit{-no} and \textit{-nu}, it uses \textit{-o} and \textit{-u}:

\begin{align*}
\text{तन्} & \rightarrow \text{तनोति} \\
\text{tan} & \rightarrow \text{tanoti} \\
\text{expand} & \rightarrow \text{someone expands}
\end{align*}

\begin{align*}
\text{तन्} & \rightarrow \text{तन्वन्ति} \\
\text{tan} & \rightarrow \text{tanvanti} \\
\text{expand} & \rightarrow \text{they expand}
\end{align*}

The \textit{tan} class contains only ten roots. But it also contains the root \textit{kṛ} (“do, make”), which is one of the most common roots in all of Sanskrit. The strong stem of \textit{kṛ} is \textit{karo-}, and the weak stem is \textit{kuru-}:

\begin{align*}
\text{कृ} & \rightarrow \text{करोति} \\
kṛ & \rightarrow \text{karoti} \\
do & \rightarrow \text{someone does}
\end{align*}

\begin{align*}
\text{कृ} & \rightarrow \text{कुर्वन्ति} \\
kṛ & \rightarrow \text{kurvanti} \\
do & \rightarrow \text{they do}
\end{align*}

The \textbf{krī class}

The \textbf{krī class} uses \textit{-nā} for its strong stem and \textit{-nī} for its weak stem:

\begin{align*}
\text{क्री} & \rightarrow \text{क्रीणाति} \\
kṛī & \rightarrow \text{kṛīṇāti} \\
\text{buy} & \rightarrow \text{someone buys}
\end{align*}
क्री → क्रीणितः

$krī → krīṇītaḥ$

buy → the two of them buy

$krī + nā$ becomes $krīṇā$ due to a sandhi rule. The idea is that $r$ might cause the n sounds that follow it to become $n$.

### Complex classes with parasmaipada endings

The complex classes use the same parasmaipada endings as the simple classes. In the tables below, the red words use a strong stem.

First, we have the present tense:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Dual</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3rd</td>
<td>सुनोति</td>
<td>सुनुतः</td>
<td>सुनवन्ति</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>sunoti</td>
<td>sunutaḥ</td>
<td>sunvantī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd</td>
<td>सुनोषि</td>
<td>सुनुथः</td>
<td>सुनुथ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>sunoṣi</td>
<td>sunuthaḥ</td>
<td>sunutha</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1st</td>
<td>सुनोमि</td>
<td>सुनुवः</td>
<td>सुनुमः</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>sunomi</td>
<td>sunuvah</td>
<td>sunumah</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notice the sandhi change in the second-person singular ($sunosī$ becomes $sunoṣi$).

Next, we have the command mood:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Dual</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3rd</td>
<td>सुनोतु</td>
<td>सुनुताम्</td>
<td>सुनवन्तु</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>sunotu</td>
<td>sunutām</td>
<td>sunvantu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd</td>
<td>सुनु</td>
<td>सुनुतम्</td>
<td>सुनुत</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>sunu</td>
<td>sunutam</td>
<td>sunuta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1st</td>
<td>सुनवानि</td>
<td>सुनवाव</td>
<td>सुनवाम</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>sunavāni</td>
<td>sunavāva</td>
<td>sunavāma</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Then the ordinary past tense:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Dual</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3rd</td>
<td>असुनोत्</td>
<td>असुनुताम्</td>
<td>असुनवन्</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>asunot</td>
<td>asunutām</td>
<td>asunvan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd</td>
<td>असुनोः</td>
<td>असुनुतम्</td>
<td>असुनुत</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>asunoḥ</td>
<td>asunutam</td>
<td>asunuta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1st</td>
<td>असुनवम्</td>
<td>असुनुव</td>
<td>असुनुम</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>asunavam</td>
<td>asunuva</td>
<td>asunuma</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

And the potential mood:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Dual</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3rd</td>
<td>सुनुयात्  sunuyāt</td>
<td>सुनुयात्मः  sunuyātam</td>
<td>सुनुयः  sunuyuḥ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd</td>
<td>सुनुयाः  sunuyāḥ</td>
<td>सुनुयात्मः  sunuyātam</td>
<td>सुनुयः  sunuyāta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1st</td>
<td>सुनुयाम्  sunuyām</td>
<td>सुनुयावः  sunuyāva</td>
<td>सुनुयाम्  sunuyāma</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notice that the ending uses -yā- instead of -ī-. But the 3rd person plural ending is just -yuḥ.

**Complex classes with ātmanepada endings**

The complex classes generally use the same ātmanepada endings as the simple classes. The major difference is the third-person plural. Although we use -ante and -anta in the simple classes, we use -ate and -ata here:

- लभन्ते labhante
  They obtain.

- सन्वते sunvate
  They press out.

- अलभन्ति alabhanta
  They obtained.

- असन्वति asunvata
  They pressed out.

First, we have the present tense:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Dual</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3rd</td>
<td>सुनुते  (sunute)</td>
<td>सुन्वाते  (sunvāte)</td>
<td>सुन्वते  (sunvate)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd</td>
<td>सुनुषे  (sunuṣe)</td>
<td>सुन्वाथे  (sunvāthe)</td>
<td>सुनुध्वे  (sunudhve)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1st</td>
<td>सुन्वे  (sunve)</td>
<td>सुनुवहे  (sunuvahe)</td>
<td>सुनुमहे  (sunumahe)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For the first person, we also have the optional forms सुनवहे (sunvahe) and सुनमहे (sunmahe).

Next is the command mood:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Dual</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3rd</td>
<td>सुनुताम्  (sunutām)</td>
<td>सुन्वाताम्  (sunvātām)</td>
<td>सुन्वताम्  (sunvatām)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd</td>
<td>सुनुष्वा  (sunuṣva)</td>
<td>सुन्वाथाम्  (sunvāthām)</td>
<td>सुनुध्वाम्  (sunudhvam)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1st</td>
<td>सुनवै  (sunavai)</td>
<td>सुनवावहै  (sunavāvahai)</td>
<td>सुनवामहै  (sunavāmahai)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Then the ordinary past tense:
Here, too, we have the optional forms *asunvahi* and *asunmahī* in the first person.

Finally, we have the potential mood:

Notice that most of these endings start with -ī.

**Endings for the tan and krī classes**

The *tan* class is essentially identical to the *su* class, including its optional forms.

The *krī* class also uses the same endings. But the last -ī of its weak stem uses a special sandhi rule: if the verb ending starts with *a*, then the -ī is removed:
Also, the second-person singular of the command mood uses the ending -hi:

एतट क्रीणिििि।

etat kriṇithi.

Buy this.

**Review**

1. What are the strong and weak stems of *su*?
2. What are the strong and weak stems of *śru*?
3. What are the strong and weak stems of *tan*?
4. What are the strong and weak stems of *kṛ*?
5. What are the strong and weak stems of *krit*?
The *ad* and *rudh* classes

In the previous lesson, we learned about three of the six complex verb classes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Root</th>
<th>Strong stem</th>
<th>Weak stem</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>सु</td>
<td>सुनो</td>
<td>सुनु</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>सयु</td>
<td>su</td>
<td>suno</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>तन्</td>
<td>तनो</td>
<td>तनु</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>तन</td>
<td>tano</td>
<td>tanu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>क्री</td>
<td>क्रीणा</td>
<td>क्रीणी</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>क्रि</td>
<td>krīṇā</td>
<td>kriṅt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In this lesson, we will learn about two more complex verb classes. Both of these classes can create stems that end with consonant sounds. And since many verb endings *start* with consonants, these classes might cause various sandhi changes:

\[ \text{तेष + ति} \rightarrow \text{तेष्टि} \]

\[ dveṣ + ti \rightarrow dveṣṭi \]

(someone) hates

**The *ad* class**

Also known as: class 2, *adādigaṇa* (“the group starting with *ad*”)

The *ad class* does not use a suffix. Instead, its strong stem is the root with a strengthened vowel, and its weak stem is the root itself.

The root *ad* has *ad* for its strong stem and the same *ad* for its weak stem. So, *ad* does not demonstrate these changes well. Instead, let's use the root *dviṣ* (“hate”), which has a clearer difference between its strong and weak stems:

\[ \text{द्वेष्टि} \]

\[ dveṣṭi. \]

(Someone) hates.
They hate.

For the word *dveṣṭi*, notice that the root ends with a consonant (*ṣ*) and the ending begins with a consonant (*t*). By a sandhi change, a *t* after *ṣ* becomes *ṭ*, so we get the result *dveṣṭi*.

The *ad* class has many irregular roots. The most important irregular root of the *ad* class is *as*, which means “be” or “exist.” Its strong stem is *as*, and its weak stem is *s*:

*वनम् अस्ति।*

*vanam asti.*

There is a forest.

*वानरावनेसन्ति।*

*vānarā vane santi.*

Monkeys are in the forest.

**The *rudh* class**

Also known as: class 7, *rudhādigaṇa* (“the group starting with *rudh*”)

Like the *ad* class, the *rudh* class also doesn’t use a suffix. Instead, we create the strong and weak stems by inserting a nasal sound after the root’s last vowel. For the strong stem, we insert *na*. For the weak stem, we insert *n*:

*रुध → रुण्ड्द्रि*

*rudh → runṇaddhi*

(Someone) obstructs.

*रुध → रुन्ध्यंति*

*rudh → rundhanti*

They obstruct.

Again, notice the sandhi change:
रुणध्व + ति → रुणद्धि  
runadh + ti → runaddhi

And as a reminder, $r$ generally causes nearby $n$ sounds to become $\eta$. Hence we have $ruṇaddhi$ and not $*runaddhi$. (We use the $*$ symbol to show that this word is not correct Sanskrit.)

**Endings of the ad class**

With one or two exceptions, the ad class uses the same endings as the krī class. But since the ad class may cause many sandhi changes, these endings may not always be clear. We want to show you what these changes are like, so we will show you all of the forms of $dviṣ$ in the special tense-moods.

First, here are the parasmaipada forms of $dviṣ$ in the present tense:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singul ar</th>
<th>Dual</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3rd</td>
<td>द्वेष्टि</td>
<td>द्विष्टाः</td>
<td>द्विष्टन्ति</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$dveṣṭi$</td>
<td>$dviṣṭaḥ$</td>
<td>$dviṣanti$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd</td>
<td>द्वेक्षि</td>
<td>द्विष्टाः</td>
<td>द्विष्टाः</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$dvekṣi$</td>
<td>$dviṣṭhaḥ$</td>
<td>$dviṣṭha$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1st</td>
<td>द्वेष्मि</td>
<td>द्विष्मः</td>
<td>द्विष्मः</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$dveṣmi$</td>
<td>$dviṣvaḥ$</td>
<td>$dviṣmaḥ$</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Next, here is the command mood:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Dual</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3rd</td>
<td>द्वेष्टु</td>
<td>द्विष्ठाम</td>
<td>द्विष्टन्तु</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>dveṣṭu</td>
<td>dviṣṭām</td>
<td>dviṣṣantu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd</td>
<td>द्विष्ठी</td>
<td>द्विष्ठाम</td>
<td>द्विष्टा</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>dviṣṭām</td>
<td>dviṣṭa</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1st</td>
<td>द्वेशाणि</td>
<td>द्वेशाव</td>
<td>द्वेशाम</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>dveṣāṇi</td>
<td>dveṣāva</td>
<td>dveṣāma</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In the second-person singular, we use _dhi_ instead of _hi_ if the root ends in a consonant. Then _dviṣ + dhi_ becomes _dviḍḍhi_ due to sandhi.

Next, we have the ordinary past tense:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Dual</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3rd</td>
<td>अद्वेष्ट</td>
<td>अद्विष्ठाम</td>
<td>अद्विष्टन्त</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>advet</td>
<td>adviṣṭām</td>
<td>adviṣṣan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd</td>
<td>अद्वेष्ट</td>
<td>अद्विष्ठाम</td>
<td>अद्विष्टा</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>advet</td>
<td>adviṣṭam</td>
<td>adviṣṭa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1st</td>
<td>अद्वेषाम</td>
<td>अद्विष्च</td>
<td>अद्विष्म</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>adveṣam</td>
<td>adviṣva</td>
<td>adviṣma</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Why do we use _advet_? This is due to a complex rule of consonant sandhi. Read our lessons on consonant sandhi to learn more.

If the root ends in -ā, we can also use the ending _-uḥ_ instead of _-an_: 
They went.

Finally, we have the potential mood:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Dual</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3rd</td>
<td>द्विष्यात्</td>
<td>द्विष्याताम्</td>
<td>द्विष्यः</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>dvisyāt</td>
<td>dvisyātam</td>
<td>dvisyuḥ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd</td>
<td>द्विष्यः</td>
<td>द्विष्यातम्</td>
<td>द्विष्यः</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>dvisyaḥ</td>
<td>dvisyātam</td>
<td>dvisyāta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1st</td>
<td>द्विष्याम्</td>
<td>द्विष्याव्</td>
<td>द्विष्याम्</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>dvisyām</td>
<td>dvisyāva</td>
<td>dvisyāma</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Now, here are the ātmanepada forms of dviṣ in the present tense:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Dual</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3rd</td>
<td>द्विषे</td>
<td>द्विषाते</td>
<td>द्विषें</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>dviṣe</td>
<td>dviṣāte</td>
<td>dviṣate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd</td>
<td>द्विक्षे</td>
<td>द्विक्षाथे</td>
<td>द्विक्षेः</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>dvikṣe</td>
<td>dviṣāthe</td>
<td>dviṣḍḥve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1st</td>
<td>द्विषे</td>
<td>द्विषधे</td>
<td>द्विषः</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>dviṣe</td>
<td>dviṣvahe</td>
<td>dviṣmahe</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

the command mood:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Dual</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3rd</td>
<td>द्विष्टम्</td>
<td>द्विषातम्</td>
<td>द्विषताम्</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>dviṣṭām</td>
<td>dviṣatām</td>
<td>dviṣatām</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd</td>
<td>द्विक्ष्व</td>
<td>द्विषाथाम्</td>
<td>द्विध्रम्</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>dvikṣva</td>
<td>dviṣāthām</td>
<td>dviḍḍhvam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1st</td>
<td>द्वेषेः</td>
<td>द्वेषावहेः</td>
<td>द्वेषामहेः</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>dveṣai</td>
<td>dveṣāvahai</td>
<td>dveṣāmahai</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**the ordinary past tense:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Dual</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3rd</td>
<td>अद्विष्ट</td>
<td>अद्विषातम्</td>
<td>अद्विषत</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>adviṣṭa</td>
<td>adviṣatām</td>
<td>adviṣata</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd</td>
<td>अद्विष्ठाः</td>
<td>अद्विषाथाम्</td>
<td>अद्विध्रम्</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>adviṣṭhāḥ</td>
<td>adviṣāthām</td>
<td>adviḍḍhvam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1st</td>
<td>अद्विष्पि</td>
<td>अद्विष्ध्रि</td>
<td>अद्विध्र्मि</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>adviṣi</td>
<td>adviṣvahi</td>
<td>adviṣmahi</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**and the potential mood:**
Endings of the *rudh* class

The *rudh* class uses the same endings as the *krī* class. But as before, the *rudh* class may cause many different sandhi changes.

Here are the *parasmaipada* forms of *rudh* in the present tense:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Dual</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3rd</td>
<td>रुणाद्धि</td>
<td>रुन्द:</td>
<td>रुन्धात्ति</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>runāddhi</em></td>
<td><em>runddhāḥ</em></td>
<td><em>rundhanti</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd</td>
<td>रुणत्सि</td>
<td>रुन्द:</td>
<td>रुन्द्व:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>runatsi</em></td>
<td><em>runddhāḥ</em></td>
<td><em>runddha</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1st</td>
<td>रुणाध्मि</td>
<td>रुन्वः</td>
<td>रुन्धमः</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>runadhmi</em></td>
<td><em>rundhvāḥ</em></td>
<td><em>rundhmāḥ</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

and the command mood:
Next are the forms of the ordinary past tense:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Dual</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3rd</td>
<td>रुणधु</td>
<td>रुन्द्धाम्</td>
<td>रुन्धान्तु</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ruṇaddhu</td>
<td>rundhām</td>
<td>rundhantu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd</td>
<td>रुन्द्धि</td>
<td>रुन्द्धम्</td>
<td>रुन्द्ध</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>runddhi</td>
<td>runddham</td>
<td>runddha</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1st</td>
<td>रुणधानि</td>
<td>रुणधाव</td>
<td>रुणधाम</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ruṇadhāni</td>
<td>ruṇadhava</td>
<td>ruṇadhāma</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Why do we use aruṇat? Again, this is due to a complex rule of consonant sandhi. Read our lessons on consonant sandhi to learn more.

Finally, we have the potential mood:
Next, we have the ātmanepada forms of *rudh* in the present tense:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Dual</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3rd</td>
<td>रुन्ध्यात्</td>
<td>रुन्ध्याताम्</td>
<td>रुन्ध्युः</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>rundhyāt</em></td>
<td><em>rundhyātam</em></td>
<td><em>rundhyuḥ</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd</td>
<td>रुन्ध्याः</td>
<td>रुन्ध्याताम्</td>
<td>रुन्ध्यात्स</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>rundhyāḥ</em></td>
<td><em>rundhyātam</em></td>
<td><em>rundhyāta</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1st</td>
<td>रुन्ध्याम्</td>
<td>रुन्ध्यावः</td>
<td>रुन्ध्याम</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>rundhyām</em></td>
<td><em>rundhyāva</em></td>
<td><em>rundhyāma</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

the command mood:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Dual</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3rd</td>
<td>रुन्ध्येः</td>
<td>रुन्ध्यातेः</td>
<td>रुन्ध्यातेः</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>rundhe</em></td>
<td><em>rundhāte</em></td>
<td><em>rundhate</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd</td>
<td>रुन्ध्यक्ष्</td>
<td>रुन्ध्याथेः</td>
<td>रुन्ध्येः</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>runtse</em></td>
<td><em>rundhāthe</em></td>
<td><em>runddhve</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1st</td>
<td>रुन्ध्ये</td>
<td>रुन्ध्याहेः</td>
<td>रुन्ध्यमहेः</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>rundhe</em></td>
<td><em>rundhvahe</em></td>
<td><em>rundhmahe</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gender</td>
<td>Singular</td>
<td>Dual</td>
<td>Plural</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>--------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd</td>
<td>रुन्द्राम्</td>
<td>रुन्द्राताम्</td>
<td>रुन्द्राताम्</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>runddham</td>
<td>rundhatam</td>
<td>rundhatam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd</td>
<td>रुन्द्व</td>
<td>रुन्द्राथाम्</td>
<td>रुन्द्राम्</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>runtsva</td>
<td>rundhatham</td>
<td>runddhvam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1st</td>
<td>रुणाथ</td>
<td>रुणाथावहे</td>
<td>रुणाथामहे</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>runnadhai</td>
<td>runadhavahai</td>
<td>runadhamahe</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

the ordinary past tense:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gender</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Dual</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3rd</td>
<td>अरुन्द्र</td>
<td>अरुन्द्राताम्</td>
<td>अरुन्द्राताम्</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>arundda</td>
<td>arundhatam</td>
<td>arundhata</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd</td>
<td>अरुन्द्राः</td>
<td>अरुन्द्राथाम्</td>
<td>अरुन्द्राम्</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>arunddha</td>
<td>arundhatham</td>
<td>arunddhvam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1st</td>
<td>अरुन्नि</td>
<td>अरुन्नवहि</td>
<td>अरुन्नमहि</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>arundhi</td>
<td>arundhvahi</td>
<td>arundhmahi</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

and the potential mood:
The *ad* and *rudh* classes cause many different sandhi changes. But we can learn these forms through exposure over time, and we can understand their meanings from context.

1. What are the strong and weak stems of *dvīś*?
2. What are the strong and weak stems of *rudh*?
3. What is the most important root of the *ad* class?
The *hu* class

Also known as: class 3, *juhotyādīgaṇa* (“the group starting with *juhoti*”)

The last class we will consider is the *hu* class. The *hu* class forms its stems in a unique way. It does not use a special suffix, and we do not insert any new sounds. Instead, we **double** the root in a special way:

\[ हु \rightarrow जुहु \]
\[ hu \rightarrow juhu \]

Offer

Then the strong stem uses a strengthened vowel and the weak stem has no extra change:

\[ जुहोति। \]
\[ juhoti. \]

(Someone) offers.

\[ जुहुतः। \]
\[ juhutaḥ. \]

(The two of them) offer.

The *hu* class is rare, but doubling is not. Many different kinds of Sanskrit verbs use doubling, and we will see more examples of it in other lessons.

**Basic rules of doubling**

Long vowels become short:

\[ दा दा \rightarrow ददा \]
\[ dā dā \rightarrow dadā \]

Aspirated sounds become unaspirated:

\[ धा धा \rightarrow धधा \]
\[ dhā dhā \rightarrow dadhā \]
Sounds pronounced at the soft palate (ka) shift to the hard palate (ca):

कि कि → चिकि
ki ki → ciki

हु हु → जुहु
hu hu → juhu

There are other minor rules, but these are the common patterns.

**Irregular roots**

The *hu* class has many irregular roots. The most important are *dā* (“give”) and *dhā* (“place”). *dā* uses the strong stem *dadā* and uses weak stem *dad*:

रामः फलं सीतायं ददाति।
rāmāḥ phalam sitāyai dadāti.
Rama gives the fruit to Sita.

ते फलानि रामाय ददाति।
te phalāni rāmāya dadati.
They give the fruits to Rama.

It also has the irregular command form *dehi*:

देहि में फलम्!
dehi me phalam!
Give me a fruit!

*dhā* generally follows the same pattern as *dā*.

**Endings of the *hu* class**

The *hu* class generally uses the same *parasmaipada* endings as the other complex classes. In the present tense, we use -*ati* instead of -*anti*: 
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Dual</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3rd</td>
<td>जुहोति</td>
<td>जुहुतः</td>
<td>जुहोति</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>juhoti</td>
<td>juhutaḥ</td>
<td>juhvati</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd</td>
<td>जुहोषिः</td>
<td>जुहुथः</td>
<td>जुहोथ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>juhoṣi</td>
<td>juhuthaḥ</td>
<td>juhutha</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1st</td>
<td>जुहोमि</td>
<td>जुहुवः</td>
<td>जुहोमः</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>juhomī</td>
<td>juhuvaḥ</td>
<td>juhumah</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The command mood is normal, but we use the ending -dhi instead of -hi:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Dual</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3rd</td>
<td>जुहोतु</td>
<td>जुहुताम्</td>
<td>जुहोतु</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>juhotu</td>
<td>juhutām</td>
<td>juhvatu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd</td>
<td>जुहुधि</td>
<td>जुहुतम्</td>
<td>जुहुत</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>juhudhi</td>
<td>juhutam</td>
<td>juhuta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1st</td>
<td>जुहवानि</td>
<td>जुहवाव</td>
<td>जुहवाम</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>juhavāni</td>
<td>juhavāva</td>
<td>juhavāma</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The ordinary past tense is normal, but we use the ending -uḥ instead of -an. This ending causes a vowel change, so we get ajuhavuḥ instead of *ajuhuvuḥ:
And the potential mood is normal:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Dual</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3rd</td>
<td>अजुहोत्</td>
<td>अजुहताम्</td>
<td>अजुहवुः</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ajuhot</td>
<td>ajuhutām</td>
<td>ajuhavuḥ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd</td>
<td>अजुहोः</td>
<td>अजुहतम्</td>
<td>अजुहत</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ajuhoḥ</td>
<td>ajuhutam</td>
<td>ajuhuta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1st</td>
<td>अजुहवम्</td>
<td>अजुहव</td>
<td>अजुहम</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ajuhavam</td>
<td>ajuhua</td>
<td>ajuhuma</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The ātmanepada endings are the same as for the other complex classes.

**Review**

We have now seen all ten of the Sanskrit verb classes. Below, you can see all ten of these classes in their traditional order. We illustrate the ad class with the root dviṣ, and we leave the weak stem blank for roots in the simple verb classes:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class</th>
<th>Strong stem</th>
<th>Weak stem</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>भू</td>
<td>भव</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bhū</td>
<td>bhava</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>अद्</td>
<td>द्वेष्</td>
<td>द्विष्</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ad</td>
<td>dveṣ</td>
<td>dviṣ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>हु</td>
<td>जुहो</td>
<td>जुहु</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hu</td>
<td>juho</td>
<td>juhu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>दिव्</td>
<td>दीव्य</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>div</td>
<td>divya</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>सु</td>
<td>सुनो</td>
<td>सुनु</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>su</td>
<td>suno</td>
<td>sunu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>तुद्</td>
<td>तुद</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tud</td>
<td>tuda</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>रुध्</td>
<td>रुनध्</td>
<td>रुन्ध्</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rudh</td>
<td>runadh</td>
<td>rundh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>तन्</td>
<td>तनो</td>
<td>तनु</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tan</td>
<td>tano</td>
<td>tanu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>क्रि</td>
<td>क्रीणा</td>
<td>क्रीणी</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>krī</td>
<td>krīṇā</td>
<td>krīṇī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>चुर्</td>
<td>चोरय</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cur</td>
<td>coraya</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

As you read and listen to more Sanskrit, you will be able to use these classes instinctively.

1. How do we double the root dā?
2. How do we double the root bht?
**karmaṇi and bhāve prayoga**

Also known as: patientive and impersonal usage; the “passive voice”

We have now seen all of the ten classes of the special tense moods. We will end this topic by briefly discussing *prayoga*.

As a reminder, Sanskrit verbs use one of three *prayoga*. We have *kartari prayoga* ("agent usage"):

नाष्णो नगां गच्छ।

रामो नगां गच्छति।

रामो नगां गच्छति।

rāmo nagaraṃ gacchati.

Rama goes to the city.

कुम्भकर्णः स्वपित।

kumbhakarnaḥ svapitī.

Kumbhakarna sleeps.

*karmaṇi prayoga* ("object usage"), which can be used if the verb uses an object:

रामेण नगां गम्यते।

रामेन नगां गम्यते।

rāmeṇa nagaraṃ gamyate.

The city is gone to by Rama.

And *bhāve prayoga* ("stative usage"), which can be used if the verb doesn't use an object:

कुम्भकर्णेन सुप्यते।

kumbhakarnena supyate.

Kumbhakarna sleeps. ("There is sleeping by Kumbhakarna.")

*prayoga* does not affect the meaning of the verb or the sentence. Instead, it is a different way of expressing the same information. It is like the difference between “I go to the store” and “The store was gone to by me.” Both express the same information, but their style and emphasis differ.

So far, all of the lessons in this topic have focused on *kartari prayoga*. In this topic, we will learn how to express the four special tense-moods in *karmaṇi prayoga* and *bhāve prayog*

रावणो हन्यते
rāvaṇo hanyate
Ravana is being killed.

रावणो हन्यताम्
rāvaṇo hanyatām
May Ravana be killed.

रावणो उह
rāvaṇo ‘hanyata
Ravana was killed.

रावणो हन्येत
rāvaṇo hanyeta
Ravana might be killed.

**Active, middle, passive voice**

English-languages resources often use the terms “active,” “middle,” and “passive” voices to describe the various combinations of prayoga and pada:

- active voice: kartari prayoga, parasmaipada
- middle voice: kartari prayoga, ātmanepada
- passive voice: karmāṇi and bhāve prayoga (always ātmanepada)

These terms are workable, but they don’t fit well with how Sanskrit works. So in our guide, we prefer to use the terms pada and prayoga.

**A new stem**

We express karmāṇi prayoga and bhāve prayoga in similar ways. First, we add the suffix ya to the root:

नी + य → नीय
nī + ya → nīya
lead → be led
Then we use ātmanepada endings. In karmanī prayoga, the person and number should agree with the object of the sentence:

अहं गजान् नयामि।

aham gajan nayāmi.
I lead the elephants.
(Verb is first-person singular like aham)

मया गजा नीयन्ते।

mayā gaja nityante.
By me, the elephants are led.
(Verb is third-person plural like gajāḥ)

And in bhāve prayoga, we use the third person singular:

मया युप्यते।

mayā supyate.
I sleep. (“There is sleeping by me”)

नरः सयुप्यते।

naraiḥ supyate.
The men sleep. (“There is sleeping by the men”)

**Adding the -ya suffix**

Generally, we can add -ya directly to the root:

नी → नीयते

nī → nīyate
lead → is led

But roots that end in short vowels use a long vowel:

जि → जीयते

ji → jīyate
conquer → is conquered

Roots that end in -ā and -ai usually use -ī instead:
स्था → रीयते
sthā → sthīyate
stand → is stood or stationed

गै → गीयते
gai → gīyate
sing → is sung

दा → दीयते
dā → diyate
give → is given

If the root ends in -ṛ, that -ṛ becomes -ri:

कृ → क्रियते
kr → kriyate
do → is done

But it becomes -ar if it follows a consonant cluster:

स्म्र → स्मयते
smṛ → smaryate
remember → is remembered

Roots that end in ṭ use -ṝ, or ār if the root starts with a “lip” consonant:

तृ → त्रीयते
tṛ → tṛyate
cross → is crossed

पृ → पूर्यते
pṛ → pūryate
fill → is filled

Finally, a few roots undergo an interesting change. Their semivowels become vowels, and any other vowels they have are removed:
This change is called *samprasāraṇa* in traditional grammar.

**The intuition behind *samprasāraṇa***

There is a clear intuition behind *samprasāraṇa*. Roughly, roots that use *samprasāraṇa* have already been strengthened. But they have all been strengthened in an unusual way: the *a* vowel has been added *after* the root vowel, not before it.

So when we use *samprasāraṇa* roots, we often must weaken the root back to the normal level. We do so by removing the *a* sound and undoing any sandhi changes.

**Review**

*karmaṇi prayoga* is common in Sanskrit, so it is worth knowing well. *bhāve prayoga* is much less common, but it still appears occasionally.

1. Do we use *parasmaipada* endings in *karmaṇi* and *bhāve prayoga*?
Verbs 2: Other tense-moods
Other tense-moods

Also known as: ārdhadhātuka verbs

This topic depends on some material from Verbs 1. Before you begin, please read Verbs 1 until the end of the lesson on ātmanepada endings.

In the core lessons, we learned that we can change a verb root into a verb stem. And once we have a verb stem, we can add endings to that stem to create a complete verb. In the examples below, note the progression from root to stem to verb:

नी → नेष्य → नेष्यामि

nt → nesya → nesyāmi
lead → will lead → I will lead

नी → निनी → निन्युः

nt → nint → ninyuḥ
lead → led (long ago) → they led (long ago)

We also learned that Sanskrit verbs express five basic kinds of information: person, number, tense-mood, prayoga, and pada.

Sanskrit uses ten different tense-moods. Four of these tense-moods use very similar stems in kartari prayoga, and the stem depends on which verb class a root belongs to:

नी → नय → नयति

nt → naya → nayati
(bhū class)

सु → सुनु → सुनोति

su → sunu → sunoti
(su class)
But the other six tense-moods form their stems in a more general way. We apply the same steps regardless of which verb class a root belongs to. For example, consider the three verbs below. They each use verbs from different verb classes, but they form their stems in an identical way:

नी → नेष्यति
\(nī → neṣyati\)

सू → सोष्यति
\(su → sosyati\)

क्री → क्रेष्यति
\(krī → kṛṣyati\)

In this topic, we will explore these six tense-moods.

**Common behavior for the six tense-moods**

Recall that for the special tense-moods, we use a special stem in \(karmanī\) \(prayoga\) and \(bhāve\) \(prayoga\). This special stem uses the suffix -ya:

नयसि
\(nayasi\)
You lead.
\(\text{(kartari\ prayoga)}\)

नीयसे
\(niyase\)
You are led.
\(\text{(karmanī\ prayoga)}\)

But for the other tense-moods, we just use \(ātmanepada\) endings without using a different stem:
नतेष्यति।
nesyati.
You will lead.

नतेष्यते।
nesyate.
You will be led.

Many verbs will also add an extra *i* sound between the root and the ending. In the examples below, notice that each verb has an extra *i* sound:

**भू → भविष्यस (भव-इ-ष्यसि)**

*bhū* → *bhaviṣyasi* (*bhav-i-syasi*)
you will become

**स्मृ → स्मरिष्यस (स्मर-इ-ष्यसि)**

*smṛ* → *smariṣyasi* (*smar-i-syasi*)
you will remember

In traditional grammar, this *i* is called *iṭ*. Different roots use *iṭ* in different ways:

- Some roots always use *iṭ*, and they are called *set* (*sa-iṭ*, “with *iṭ*”) roots.
- Other roots don’t use *iṭ*, and they are called *aniṭ* (*an-iṭ*, “without *iṭ*”) roots.
- A third group of roots uses *iṭ* optionally, and they are called *veṭ* (*vā-iṭ*, “optional *iṭ*”) roots.

Finally, roots that end in *-e*, *-ai*, or *-au* will have their last vowel change to *-ā*:

**गै → गास्यति**

*gai* → *gāsyati*
sing → will sing

**Review**

1. How do we express *karmaṇi prayoga* for the special tense-moods?
2. How do we express *karmaṇi prayoga* for the other tense-moods?
3. What is *iṭ*?
The simple future tense
Also known as: the s future, the second future, bhavisyan (“future”), lṛṭ

The simple future tense refers to events that have not yet occurred:

\[
\text{गम्} \rightarrow \text{गमिष्यामि} \\
gam \rightarrow \text{gamiṣyāmi} \\
go \rightarrow \text{I will go.}
\]

We call this the simple future tense because Sanskrit has another tense-mood that refers specifically to distant future events.

Making the stem

To make the stem of the simple future tense, we strengthen the root's vowel and add -ṣya to the end of the root. Some roots don't use iṭ:

\[
\text{नी} \rightarrow \text{नेष्य} \\
ni \rightarrow \text{neṣya} \\
lead \rightarrow \text{will lead}
\]

and others do:

\[
\text{वन्दू} \rightarrow \text{वन्दिष्य} \\
vand \rightarrow \text{vandiṣya} \\
venerate \rightarrow \text{will venerate}
\]

In these examples, note that -ṣya becomes -ṣya due to a sandhi rule. s becomes ʃ after most vowels and after r and k sounds. For details, see our lessons on consonant sandhi.

We also add iṭ if the root ends in r:

\[
\text{कृ} \rightarrow \text{करिष्य} \\
kṛ \rightarrow \text{karisya} \\
do \rightarrow \text{will do}
\]
सम्र → स्मिष्य
smr → smariṣya
remember → will remember

And a few other roots use इ here as well:

गम् → गमिष्य
gam → gamiṣya
go → will go

Since या starts with a consonant, it may cause many sandhi changes if the root ends with a consonant. Here are some examples:

लभ्य → लप्स्य
labh → lapsya
obtain → will obtain

बुध्य → भोत्य
budh → bhotsya
awaken → will awaken

दह्य → धक्ष्य
dah → dhakṣya
burn → will burn

Finally, there are several slightly irregular stems. Here are some common ones:

द्रश्य → द्रक्ष्य
dṛś → drakṣya
see → will see

मन् → मंस्य
man → maṃsya
think → will think
Adding endings

We use the same ending and pada as we would in the present tense. In the examples below, the first result on the right is in the present tense, and the second is in the simple future tense:

**गम् → गच्छति, गमिष्यति**

*gam → gacchati, gamisyati*

go → goes, will go

**लभ् → लभते, लप्स्यते**

*labh → labhate, lapsyate*

obtain → obtains, will obtain

**कृ → करोति, करिष्यति**

*kr → karoti, kariṣyati*

do → does, will do

**कृ → करुते, करिष्यते**

*kr → kurute, kariṣyate*

do → does, will do

Review

1. What suffix do we use to create the stem of the simple future?
2. Which endings do we use in the simple future?
The conditional mood

Also known as: saṃketaḥ (“condition”), lṛṇ

The conditional mood describes situations that would happen or would have happened. In other words, it is used for hypothetical situations. Here is a classic example:

दक्षिणेन चेदु आयास्यन्त न शकटे पर्याभविष्यत्

$dakśiṇena ced āyasyan na śakaṭaṁ paryābhaviṣyat$

If he would come by the southern road, the cart would not overturn.

To form the conditional, we start with the stem from the simple future:

नी → नेष्य

$nī → neṣya$

lead → will lead

Then we use this stem as if we were using the ordinary past tense:

अनेष्यत्

$anesyat$

would lead, would have led

You can compare the conditional and the ordinary past in the examples below. In each example, the right side has two results. The first result uses the ordinary past and the second uses the conditional:

नी → अनयत्, अनेष्यत्

$nī → anayat, aneṣyat$

lead → led, would do

क्र → अकरोत्, अकरिष्यत्

$kr → akarot, akarıṣyat$

do → did, would do

(parasmaipada)
The conditional mood is rare. So why are we studying it now? We are studying it now because it is so similar to the tense-moods we have studied already.

Review

1. What does the conditional mean?
The distant future tense
Also known as: the periphrastic future, the first future, anadyānate bhaviṣyan (“future not of today”), lūṭ

The distant future tense traditionally refers to future actions that will not happen soon. In Sanskrit, it is called an-adyatana (“not of today”). Here is an example of the distant future tense:

रामो नेता।
rāmo netā.
Rama will (eventually) lead.

Compared to the simple future tense, the distant future tense describes events that are further away. It also has a more definite sense than the simple future:

रामो नेता।
rāmo netā.
Rama will (surely and eventually) lead.

Since netā is also a nominal word that means “leader,” we can also interpret this sentence in a different way:

रामो नेता।
rāmo netā.
Rama is a leader.

Usually, we can choose the correct interpretation if we consider the sentence’s context.

Making the stem

We form the stem by strengthening the root and adding the suffix -tā:

नी → नेता
nī → netā
lead → will lead

As usual, some roots will use iṭ:
Since -tā starts with a consonant, many sandhi changes might occur:

बुध् → बोद्धा  
*budh* → *boddhā*  
awaken → will awaken

दृष्ट् → द्रष्टा  
*drś* → *draṣṭā*  
see → will see

### Adding endings

Here are the endings we use with *parasmaipada* roots:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Dual</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3rd</td>
<td>नेताः</td>
<td>नेतारः</td>
<td>नेतारः</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>netā</td>
<td>netārau</td>
<td>netāraḥ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd</td>
<td>नेतासि</td>
<td>नेतास्थः</td>
<td>नेतास्थ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>netāsi</td>
<td>netāsthāḥ</td>
<td>netāsthā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1st</td>
<td>नेतास्मि</td>
<td>नेतास्मः</td>
<td>नेतास्मः</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>netāsmi</td>
<td>netāsvaḥ</td>
<td>netāsmaḥ</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If you have read some of our lessons on nominals, you might recognize the forms we use here in the third person. *netā*, *netārau*, and *netāraḥ* are the masculine case 1 forms of the stem *netṛ* (“leader”). The distant future is a combination of this stem and the forms of the root *as* (“be,” “exist”):

नेताः + असि → नेतासि  
*netā + asi* → *netāsi*
नेतान् + अस्मि → नेतास्मि
netā + asmi → netāsmi

Here are the endings we use with ātmanepada roots:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Dual</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3rd</td>
<td>नेता</td>
<td>नेताराओ</td>
<td>नेताराहि</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>netā</td>
<td>netārau</td>
<td>netāraḥ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd</td>
<td>नेतासेः</td>
<td>नेतासाथे</td>
<td>नेताध्वे</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>netāse</td>
<td>netāsāthe</td>
<td>netādḥve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1st</td>
<td>नेताहे</td>
<td>नेतास्वहे</td>
<td>नेतास्माहे</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>netāhe</td>
<td>netāsvahe</td>
<td>netāsmahe</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Review

1. What is the difference in meaning between the distant future and the simple future?
The distant past tense

Also known as: the perfect, parokṣe bhūta (“remote past”), liṭ

The distant past tense usually describes historical or legendary events:

नी → निनाय
nī → nināya
lead → led (long ago)

Certain types of Sanskrit literature use the distant past tense often. For example, the Rāmāyaṇa and the Mahābhārata both use the distant past tense extensively.

The distant past tense uses many irregular forms. So in this lesson, we will focus just on its most common patterns.

If the information here is overwhelming, skip to the Review at the bottom to see just the essential information.

Strong and weak stems

The distant past tense has two stems: a strong stem and a weak stem. We use the strong stem with singular parasmaipada endings:

निनी + अ → निनाय
ninī + a → nināya
someone led (long ago, parasmaipada)

And the weak stem with all other endings:

निनी + उः → निन्युः
ninī + uḥ → ninyuḥ
they led (long ago, parasmaipada)

निनी + इऽ → निन्यऽ
ninī + ire → ninyire
they led (long ago, ātmanepada)
Rules of doubling
Also known as: dvitva

Generally, we make the stem of this tense-mood by doubling the root. Then we apply some basic rules to simplify the first copy of the root.

Although each of these rules is basic, there are quite a few of them. As usual, we recommend that you don’t waste time memorizing these rules. Instead, simply get a feel for the kinds of changes that occur. As you read more Sanskrit, you will naturally start to assimilate and internalize them.

When doubling, long vowels become short:

दा दा → ददा
dā dā → dadā
give

नी नी → निनी
nī nī → ninī
lead

Aspirated sounds become unaspirated:

धा धा → द्धा
dhā dhā → dadhā
place

All consonants after the double’s vowel are removed:

बुध बुध् → बुबुध्
budh budh → bubudh
awaken

अस् अस् → आस्
as as → ās
be, exist

And if a root starts in multiple consonants, only one of them is kept. We usually keep the second consonant:
But if the second consonant is nasal, we keep the first:

स्मिकृ स्मिकृ → सस्मिकृ
smṛ smṛ → sasmṛ
remember

Sounds pronounced at the soft palate (ka) shift to the hard palate (ca):

गा गा → जगा
gā gā → jagā
sing

र, ṛ, and Ṣ become a:

कृ कृ → चकृ
krṛ krṛ → cakṛ
do

तृ तृ → ततृ
tṛ tṛ → tatṛ
cross

क्लप् → चक्लप्
klp → caklp
be fit for

Roots that allow samprasāraṇa will use it:
For details on samprásāraṇa, see our lesson on the special tenses in karmani and bhāve prayoga.

Finally, here is a common exception:

bhū → babhū
bhū → babhū
become

There are various other small rules. But these are the basic patterns. Rather than memorize these changes, read over the examples above and get a basic feeling for what kinds of sound changes occur.

**Making the stem**

Roots with one vowel generally use the doubling procedure we described above:

kr → cakra
kr → cakra
do

doubling

doubling

do

For the weak stem, some roots lose their vowel completely. Here are some common examples:
जजन् + ए → जजेः

*jajan + e → jajñe*
was born

जगम् + उ: → जगमुः

*jagam + uḥ → jagmuḥ*
they went

Roots that allow *samprasāraṇa* will use it again:

उवच् → उ + उच् → उचुः

*uvac → u + uc → ūcuḥ*
the spoke

इयज् → इ + इज् → इजुः

*iyaj → i + ij → ījuḥ*
they sacrificed

उवद् → उ + उद् → उदुः

*uvad → u + ud → ūduḥ*
they said

Under very specific conditions, we may also get this weak stem:

शक् → शेकुः

*šak → šekuḥ*
they were able

मन् → मेनिरे

*man → menire*
they thought

The specific conditions are:

1. The root vowel is *a*.
2. *a* has exactly one consonant on either side of it.
3. The doubled root starts with the same sound as the original root.
To make these conditions clear, here are some examples of roots that violate these conditions. Since they violate these conditions, they use the normal weak stem we described above:

\[ \text{शुच्} \rightarrow \text{शुचु:} \]
\[ \text{śuc} \rightarrow \text{śuśucuh} \]
They grieved.
(violates condition 1 because the root vowel is not \( a \).)

\[ \text{नन्द्} \rightarrow \text{नन्दु:} \]
\[ \text{nand} \rightarrow \text{nananduḥ} \]
They delighted.
(violates condition 2 because \( a \) is followed by two consonants)

\[ \text{गण्} \rightarrow \text{जगणु:} \]
\[ \text{gan} \rightarrow \text{jaganuḥ} \]
They counted.
(violates condition 3 because the double does not start with \( g \).)

**A special form for derived roots**

For derived roots and roots in the cur class, we use a simple procedure. First, we add -\( ām \) to the root:

\[ \text{बोधि} \rightarrow \text{बोधयाम्} \]
\[ \text{bodhi} \rightarrow \text{bodhayām} \]
wake someone up

Then, we use this result with the roots \( kr, bhū, \) or \( as \):

\[ \text{बोधयाणकार} \]
\[ \text{bodhayāṇcakāra} \]
woke (someone) up

\[ \text{बोधयाम्ब्यम्} \]
\[ \text{bodhayāmbahuva} \]
woke (someone) up
बोधयामास
*bodhayāmāsa*
woke (someone) up

You might also see these results written as separate words:

बोधयां चकार
*bodhayāṃ cakāra*
woke (someone) up

बोधयां बभूव
*bodhayāṃ babhūva*
woke (someone) up

बोधयाम् आस
*bodhayām āsa*
woke (someone) up

**Adding parasmaipada endings**

The distant past tense uses special *parasmaipada* endings:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Dual</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3rd</td>
<td>अ</td>
<td>अतुस्</td>
<td>उस्</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a</td>
<td>atus</td>
<td>us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd</td>
<td>थ</td>
<td>अथुस्</td>
<td>अ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tha</td>
<td>athus</td>
<td>a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1st</td>
<td>अ</td>
<td>व</td>
<td>म</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a</td>
<td>va</td>
<td>ma</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If the *parasmaipada* ending is singular, we use the strong stem. Otherwise, we use the weak stem.
The -a endings in the singular cause an unusual change. Roots that end in vowels usually strengthen to the strongest level:

नी → निनाय
nt → nindya
lead → led

क्र → चकार
kr → cakāra
do → did

And roots whose second to last sound is a vowel strengthen that vowel to e, o, or ā:

विश् → विवेश
viś → viveśa
enter → entered

शुच् → शुशोच
śuc → śuśoca
grieve → grieved

हस् → जहास
has → jahāsa
laugh → laughed

The first-person singular a has an optional form that uses a medium level of strengthening:

क्र → चकार, चकर
kr → cakāra, cakara
do → I did (long ago)

To make these endings clear, here are the forms of the root kr:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Dual</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3rd</td>
<td>चकार</td>
<td>चकतुस्</td>
<td>चकुस्</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>cakāra</td>
<td>cakratus</td>
<td>cakrus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd</td>
<td>चकर्थि</td>
<td>चकर्थुस्</td>
<td>चकर</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>cakartha</td>
<td>cakrathus</td>
<td>cakra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1st</td>
<td>चकार, चकर</td>
<td>चक्रव</td>
<td>चक्रम</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>cakāra, cakara</td>
<td>cakrva</td>
<td>cakra</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

But if the root ends in -ā, we use the ending -au in the singular instead of -a. To make this clear, here are the forms of the root sthā. Note that sthā also has an optional version in the second-person singular:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Dual</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3rd</td>
<td>तस्थाओ</td>
<td>तस्थातुः</td>
<td>तस्थुः</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tasthau</td>
<td>tasthatuḥ</td>
<td>tasthuḥ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd</td>
<td>तस्थाथ, तस्थिथ</td>
<td>तस्थाथुः</td>
<td>तस्थ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tasthātha, tasthitha</td>
<td>tasthatuḥ</td>
<td>tastha</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1st</td>
<td>तस्थाओ</td>
<td>तस्थिथिव</td>
<td>तस्थिम</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>tasthau</td>
<td>tasthiva</td>
<td>tasthima</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Adding ātmanepada endings**

We generally use the standard ātmanepada endings of the present tense. The exceptions are the new endings e and iare in the third person:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Dual</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3rd</td>
<td>ए</td>
<td>आते</td>
<td>इते</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>e</td>
<td>āte</td>
<td>ire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd</td>
<td>से</td>
<td>आथे</td>
<td>ध्वे</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>se</td>
<td>āthe</td>
<td>dhve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1st</td>
<td>ए</td>
<td>वहे</td>
<td>महे</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>e</td>
<td>vahe</td>
<td>mahe</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Again, here are the forms of the root *kṛ*:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Dual</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3rd</td>
<td>चक्रि</td>
<td>चक्राते</td>
<td>चक्रिरे</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>cakre</td>
<td>cakrāte</td>
<td>cakrire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd</td>
<td>चक्रृषे</td>
<td>चक्राथे</td>
<td>चक्रृध्वे</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>cakṛṣe</td>
<td>cakrāthe</td>
<td>cakṛḍhve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1st</td>
<td>चक्रि</td>
<td>चक्रवहे</td>
<td>चक्रमहे</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>cakre</td>
<td>cakṛvahe</td>
<td>cakṛmahe</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note the change from *dhve* to *ḍhve*, which is common in the distant past tense.

**Review**

The distant past tense has many complicated patterns. The best way to get used to it, as usual, is to read a lot of Sanskrit.
But if you are feeling overwhelmed by the number of details here, here are the simple essentials you can remember and use:

1. You can usually recognize this tense by its doubled sound. You don't need to remember the details of how the stem is formed or how the doubling is done, as long as you can recognize that *something* has been doubled.

2. This tense is almost always used in the third person, and its singular and plural forms are by far the most common. You can ignore the other endings for now.

3. The context of the sentence will help make the meaning of the verb clear.
The recent past tense
Also known as: the aorist, bhūta (“past”), luṅ

Traditionally, the recent past tense refers to any past action regardless of time period:

अतौष ज्
aśrauṣam
I heard.

But recall that Sanskrit has three past tenses. Since the ordinary past tense traditionally refers to non-recent (anadyatana, “not of today”) events, and since the distant past tense refers to distant (parokṣa, “unwitnessed”) events, only this tense can refer to very recent past events. That is why we call it the recent past tense.

The recent past tense often has the sense of having just done something:

अतौष ज्
aśrauṣam
I have heard.

This tense is rare and complicated. Here, we will focus only on a few of its common patterns.

Making the stem

We make the stem of the recent past tense in many different patterns. Some roots use certain patterns, and other roots use other patterns.

Some roots are completely unchanged:

भू → अभू:
bhū → abhūḥ
become → you have become

Others use a connecting -a vowel:
गम् → अगमः:
gam → agamaḥ
go → you have gone

A third group doubles in a special way:

नश् → अनीनशत्
naś → anīnaśat
perish, be destroyed → it has perished

A fourth group strengthens with the suffix -siṣ:

नम् → अनामिषम्
nam → anāṃsiṣam
bow → I have bowed

A fifth group uses -sa:

श्रु → अश्रूषम्
śru → aśrauṣam
hear → I have heard

And there are other minor patterns, too.

Adding endings

Generally, these stems use the endings of the ordinary past tense.

The recent past tense without a-

Here is a common pattern worth knowing. We can use the forms of the recent past tense with a word like mā (“don’t”) to state commands:

मा गमः।
mā gamah.
Don't go.


Don't fear.

This command doesn't have any "past" meaning. It is just an alternate way of giving a command.
The blessing mood

Also known as: the benedictive, āśīḥ (“hope, wish”), āśīrliṅ

This lesson depends on material from the “karmaṇi and bhāve prayoga” lesson from Verbs 1.

The blessing mood usually expresses a blessing or prayer:

शुभं भूयात्
śubham bhūyāt
May there be welfare (to all).

Like the recent past tense, the blessing mood is rare.

Making the stem

Roots that use parasmaipada endings generally use the same -ya stem that we use in karmaṇi and bhāve prayoga for the special tense-moods:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{गम्} & \rightarrow \text{गम्य} & \rightarrow \text{गम्यात्} \\
\text{go} & \rightarrow \text{go} & \rightarrow \text{may (someone) go} \\
\text{vac} & \rightarrow \text{ucya} & \rightarrow \text{ucyāt} \\
\text{speak} & \rightarrow \text{speak} & \rightarrow \text{may (someone) speak}
\end{align*}
\]

But even though these forms use a similar stem, they have the sense of kartari prayoga.

For ātmanepada endings, we strengthen the root but don't add any special suffixes.

Adding endings

Here are the ends we add for parasmaipada roots:
These endings are similar to the ones we use for the potential mood. The difference is that we add -yās- to the beginning of each ending.

Here is an example of how to use these endings:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Dual</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3rd</td>
<td>यात्</td>
<td>याताम्</td>
<td>यासुः</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>yāt</td>
<td>yātām</td>
<td>yāsuḥ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd</td>
<td>या:</td>
<td>यास्तम्</td>
<td>यास्त</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>yah</td>
<td>yāstam</td>
<td>yāsta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1st</td>
<td>यास्तम्</td>
<td>यास्हव</td>
<td>यास्म</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>yāsam</td>
<td>yāsva</td>
<td>yāsma</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The blessing mood is quite rare, and its ātmanepada forms are even rarer. Here are the ātmanepada endings we use:
Again, these endings are similar to the ones we use for the potential mood. The difference is that we add -sīs- to the beginning of each ending. This -sīs becomes -sī- if the ending starts with a voiced sound.

Here is an example of how to use these endings:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Dual</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3rd</td>
<td>सीष्ट</td>
<td>सीयास्ताम्</td>
<td>सीरन्</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>sīṣṭa</td>
<td>sīyāstām</td>
<td>sīran</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd</td>
<td>सीष्ठा:</td>
<td>सीयास्थाम्</td>
<td>सीध्वम्</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>sīṣṭhāḥ</td>
<td>sīyāsthām</td>
<td>stādhvam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1st</td>
<td>सीय</td>
<td>सीवहि</td>
<td>सीमहि</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>sīya</td>
<td>sīvahi</td>
<td>stāmahi</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note that the first s of these endings changed due to sandhi.

**Review**

1. How do we form the *parasmaipada* stem for this tense-mood?
Verbs 3: Derived roots
Causal roots

Also known as: causative roots, निजात ("ending in the निच affix")

In the core lessons, we learned that we can create new verb roots from existing ones. These derived roots modify the root's basic meaning in some way. Once we have a derived root, we can use it the same way we would use any verb root.

One of the most common derived roots is the causal root. You can see some examples of causal roots below:

नी → नायि → नाययति
nī → nāyi → nāyayati
lead → make lead → they make (someone) lead

चर्→ चारि → चारयति
cair → cāri → cārayati
walk → make walk → they make (someone) walk

Some causal roots might also have a more idiomatic meaning:

गमयति
gamayati
makes go; passes (time), leads (someone)

Making the root

We make the causal root by adding -i to the end of the original root.

Roots that end in vowels strengthen to the strongest level:

नी → नायि
nī → nāyi
lead → make lead

भू→ भावि
bhū → bhāvi
become → make become
कृ → कारि
kr → kāri
do → make do

Other vowels often strengthen to e or o:
शुचि → शोचि
śuc → śoci
grieve → make grieve

Roots that end in -ā generally use an extra -p- sound. Roots that end in -e, -ai, or -o have their final vowel changed to -ā:
स्था → स्थापि
sthā → sthāpi
stand → make stand

गै → गापि
gai → gāpi
sing → make sing

दा → दापि
dā → dāpi
give → make give

And there are a few irregular changes:
गम् → गमि
gam → gami
go → make go

हन् → घापि
han → ghāti
kill, strike → make strike
Using the root

We treat this root like a member of the bhū class and can use either parasmaipada or ātmanepada endings:

कारि → कारयति

\( kāri \rightarrow kārayati \)
make do → makes do

कारि → कारिष्यति

\( kāri \rightarrow kārayisyati \)
make do → will make do

कारि → कारयां चकार

\( kāri \rightarrow kārayāṁ cakāra \)
make do → made do (long ago)
Desiderative roots

Also known as: sannanta (“ending in the san affix”)

This lesson depends on material from Verbs 2.

Desiderative roots have a complex name but express a simple idea. Simply, they express the idea of wanting to do something.

जिगमिषामि
jigamisāmi
I want to go.

A few roots create this derived root without any sense of “wanting”. These derived roots usually have special idiomatic meanings:

तिज̣ → तितिक्षति
tij → titikṣati
be sharp → endures

गुप् → जुगुपसति
gup → jugupsati
protect → detests, despises

मन् → मीमांसति
man → mīmāṃsati
think → investigates

Making the root

We double the root and add -s to the root. Some roots will use the connecting ī vowel as well.

When we studied the distant past tense, we learned some of the basic rules of doubling. The desiderative root follows similar rules but with a few small changes.

First, the a in the doubled root sound changes to i:
स्था → तिस्थास्
sthā → tiṣṭhās
stand → want to stand

Roots ending in a short vowel use a long vowel:

स्तु → तुष्टस्
stu → tuṣṭās
praise → want to praise

श्रु → शुष्ठुष्टि
śru → śuṣṛṣ
hear → want to hear; attend or serve (idiomatic meaning)

Roots ending in -ṛ or -ṝ generally change their final vowel to -īr:

कृ → चिकिर्
kṛ → cikīrṣ
do → want to do

तृ → तितीर्
tṝ → titīrṣ
cross → want to cross

but use -ūr if the vowel follows a “lip” consonant (pa):

पृ → पुपूर्
pṛ → pupūrṣ
fill → want to fill

मृ → मुमूर्
mṛ → mumūrṣ
die → “want to die”; be about to die

Here are some common irregular roots:
Using the root

Desiderative roots generally use the same pada as the original root:

करोमि → चिकिर्षामि
karomi → cikīrṣāmi
I do → I want to do
(parasmaipada)

कुर्वे → चिकिर्षे
kurve → cikīrṣe
I do → I want to do
(atmanepada)

For the special tense-moods, we use this root as if it were part of the tud class:

चिकिर्षन्ति
cikīrṣanti
they want to do

जिगामिषेत्
jigamiṣet
(someone) might want to go

For the distant past tense, we use the suffix -ām:
जिगमिषां चकार
cjgamiśāṃ cakāra
(someone) wanted to go (long ago)
Nominal roots

There are various suffixes that turn a nominal stem into a verb root. Here, we will share the most common of these suffixes.

First is the suffix -i. This suffix is the most common, and we use it in the same way as the causal suffix -i:

- मिश्र → मिश्रयति
  - miśra → miśrayati
  - mixed → mixes

- मूत्र → मूत्रयति
  - mūtra → mūtrayati
  - urine, pee → urinates, pees

- व्र → व्रतयति
  - vrata → vratayati
  - vow → observes a vow

Next is the suffix -ya, which generally changes the stem's final a to ā. -ya also usually lengthens the stem's final vowel:

- पुत्र → पुत्रीयति
  - putra → putrīyati
  - son → wants a son

- कवि → कवीयति
  - kavi → kaviyati
  - poet → wants a poet

We might also consider the suffix -kāmya:

- पुत्र → पुत्रकाम्यति
  - putra → putrakāmyati
  - son → wants a son
यशस् → यशस्काम्याति

*yaśas → yaśaskāmyati*

fame → wants fame
Intensive roots

Also known as: frequentative roots, yañanta (“ending in the affix yañ”)

**Intensive roots** show that an action was done in an intense or frequent way:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{लप्ति} & \rightarrow \text{ललेप्ते} \\
lapati & \rightarrow \text{lālapyate} \\
laments & \rightarrow \text{repeatedly laments}
\end{align*}
\]

With verbs of motion, the intensive implies crooked or difficult motion:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{जङ्गम्ये} & \\
jaṅgamyate
\end{align*}
\]

goes crookedly

And for certain roots, the intensive implies blameworthy or inept action:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{लोलुप्ये} & \\
lolupyate
\end{align*}
\]

cuts badly

Although intensive roots can be used with parasmaipada endings, such forms are very rare. Here, we will focus on the form used with ātmanepada endings.

**Making the root**

Generally, roots that start with vowels and roots in the cur class cannot make intensive roots. But most other roots can.

To make the intensive root, we use a special kind of doubling. First, we add the suffix -ya, which causes the same changes as the karmāṇi prayoga-ya suffix we used for the special tense-moods:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{लुप्} & \rightarrow \text{लुप्य} \\
lup & \rightarrow \text{lupya}
\end{align*}
\]

Then, we double the root according to the normal rules:
Finally, we strengthen the double's vowel:

लु लुप्य → लोलुप्य
lu lupya → lolupya

Here are some other examples:

भू → बोभूय
bhū → bobhūya
repeatedly be

कृ → चेरीय
kr → cekrīya
repeatedly do

And a common exception if r is the middle vowel:

स्रप् → सरीस्रप्य
sṛp → sarīsṛpya
repeatedly creep; creep along

वृत् → वरीवृत्य
vṛt → varīvṛtya
repeatedly turn

नृत् → नरीनृत्य
nṛt → narīnṛtya
repeatedly dance

Using the root

The intensive roots always use ātmanepada endings:
म्यते
jaṅgamye
goes crookedly

For the special tense-moods, we use these roots as if they were part of the div class:

नरीनृत्येत
nartnrtyeta
might repeatedly dance

And for the distant past tense, we use the suffix -ām:

लोलुप्यां चके
lolupāṁ cakre
(someone) cut badly (long ago)
Uninflected words
Types of uninflected words

In Sanskrit, we often modify a word's sounds to change its meaning. We often modify both verbs:

\[
\text{गम्} \rightarrow \text{गमिष्यसि}
\]

\[
gam \rightarrow \text{gamiṣyasi}
\]

\[
go \rightarrow \text{You will go.}
\]

And nominals:

\[
\text{नर} \rightarrow \text{नरेषु}
\]

\[
nara \rightarrow \text{nareseṣu}
\]

\[
\text{man} \rightarrow \text{among the men}
\]

These kinds of changes are called \textit{inflection}. Sanskrit uses inflection extensively, so it is sometimes called a \textit{highly inflected} language.

Sanskrit also has a large class of words that we can call \textit{uninflected words} (\textit{avyayāni}, “unchanging”), sometimes also called \textit{indeclinables} in English. These words are “fixed” in a way that nominals and verbs are not. Uninflected words can still go through sandhi changes, but otherwise, they always stay the same:

\[
\text{त्वं न गच्छसि}.
\]

\[
tvam na gacchasi.
\]

\[
\text{You do not go.}
\]

\[
\text{अहं न गमिष्यामि}.
\]

\[
aham na gamisyami.
\]

\[
\text{I will not go.}
\]

\[
\text{गजा न गच्छेयुः}.
\]

\[
gajā na gaccheyuḥ.
\]

\[
\text{The elephants might not go.}
\]
Types of uninflected words

There are a few important categories of uninflected words.

First are what we might call **prepositions**. In English, this term refers to words like “over,” “under,” “around,” and so on. In Sanskrit, this term refers to words that are usually used as verb prefixes:

- गच्छन्ति → आगच्छन्ति
  
  gacchanti → āgacchanti
  
  They go. → They come (“go here”).

- गच्छन्ति → सांगच्छन्ति
  
  gacchanti → saṃgacchanti
  
  They go. → They meet (“go together”).

Prepositions are part of a larger class of words call **nipātāḥ**, which are miscellaneous words:

- राम: सीता च
  
  rāmaḥ sitā ca
  
  Rama and Sita

- हे राम त्वं कुत्र?
  
  he rāma tvāṃ kutra?
  
  Hey Rama! Where are you?

Finally, we have **adverbs**, which modify the verb in some way. Many of them are created from adjectives:

- मन्द → मन्दम्
  
  manda → mandam
  
  slow → slowly
The upasarga
Also known as: the preverb, the preposition, the verb prefix

In traditional grammar, verb prefixes are considered a type of uninflected word. We learned about several different verb prefixes in the core lessons:

गच्छन्ति → समागच्छन्ति
gacchanti → samagacchanti
they go → they come together; they convene ("go together here")

These verb prefixes are part of a list of twenty special uninflected words. When these words are used as verb prefixes, they are called upasargas. But these words have other meanings and uses, too.

The list
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Basic meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>अति</td>
<td>beyond, over, excessive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>ati</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>अधि</td>
<td>above, over</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>adhi</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>अनु</td>
<td>after, along</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>anu</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>अप</td>
<td>away from</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>apa</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>अपि</td>
<td>close to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>api</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>अभि</td>
<td>towards</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>abhi</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>अव</td>
<td>down, downward</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>ava</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>आ</td>
<td>here, near</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>a</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>उद्र</td>
<td>up, upward</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>ud</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>उप</td>
<td>next to, under</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>upa</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>दुस्</td>
<td>bad, difficult</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>dus</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>नि</td>
<td>in, into</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>ni</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>निस्</td>
<td>out, out of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>nis</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
How to use an upasarga

An upasarga usually does one of three things. First, it might change the root's meaning in a straightforward way:

- गच्छन्ति → सामगच्छन्ति  
  gacchanti → samgacchanti  
  they go → they meet ("go together")

- नन्ति → सामनन्ति  
  nayanti → samnayanti  
  they lead → They unite ("lead (others) together")

Second, it might create a totally new meaning. This new meaning usually depends on cultural context:
gan̷aṭh₂nti → agaṇ̷aṭh₂nti

\(gacchanti \rightarrow avagacchanti\)
they go \(\rightarrow\) they understand

Third, it might intensify the root’s basic meaning or leave it unchanged:

\(jayaṭi \rightarrow sanjayaṭi\)

\(jayati \rightarrow samjayati\)
they conquer \(\rightarrow\) they (intensely or fully) conquer

We can also use multiple upasarga at a time:

\(gacchanti \rightarrow samāgacchanti\)
they go \(\rightarrow\) they come together; they convene (“go together here”)

\(nayanti \rightarrow samānayanti\)
they lead \(\rightarrow\) they gather (“lead together here”)

Many Sanskrit verbs use the prefix \(a\)-, which usually indicates the past tense. When we use an upasarga, we place it before this \(a\)-:

\(ā + agacchan \rightarrow āgacchan\)
They came.

\(pari + agacchan \rightarrow paryagacchan\)
They went around.

In older Sanskrit, the upasarga is a more independent word and can appear almost anywhere in the sentence. But in later Sanskrit, the upasarga usually combines with the verb and creates a single word.
Other uses of these words

Some of these words can be used independently of any verb. Here are some common examples.

-api has the sense of “also” or “even” when it follows a word:

रामो वनं गच्छति। लक्ष्मणो अपि वनं गच्छति।
rāmo vanaṁ gacchati. lakṣmaṇo 'pi vanaṁ gacchati.
Rama goes to the forest. Lakshmana also goes to the forest.

रामो न रावणादृ अपि भीतः।
rāmo na rāvaṇād api bhītaḥ.
Rama is not even afraid of Ravana.

-api can also be used to ask simple yes/no questions. If it is used this way, it appears at the beginning of the sentence:

अपि त्वं सुखिनी।
api tvāṁ sukhīnī.
Are you happy?

Another common example is prati. It can be used with a noun in case 2 like so:

रामं प्रति
rāmaṁ prati
regarding Rama, ...

तत् प्रति
tat prati
regarding that, ...
Other prefixes

The *upasarga* is the most common type of verb prefix. But there are other verb prefixes that we can use with a verb, too. In this lesson, we will learn about some of these prefixes.

**gati**

There is a miscellaneous group of prefixes called *gati*. Usually, these prefixes are used only with specific roots. Here are some common *gati* prefixes:

- **ष्णो → अलअंष्णो**
  - *karoti* → *alaṃkaroti*
  - does, makes → decorates, adorns

- **ष्णो → सत्कष्णो**
  - *karoti* → *satkaroti*
  - does, makes → honors, respects

- **ष्णो → नमस्कष्णो**
  - *karoti* → *namaskaroti*
  - does, makes → honors, venerates

- **गच्छ → अन्तिगर्मच्छ**
  - *gacchati* → *antargacchati*
  - goes → “goes within”; disappears

- **भव → आवभर्मव**
  - *bhavati* → *āvirbhavati*
  - becomes → becomes apparent or manifest

**-sāt**

In addition to the prefixes we have seen so far, we can also turn *nominals* into verb prefixes.
We can create one type of nominal prefix by adding -sāt to the end of the nominal stem. Usually, we use this prefix with the words kṛ (“do, make”) or bhū (“become”).

**भस्म → भस्मसात्करोति**

*bhasma* → *bhasmasātkaroti*
ash → turns (something else) to ash

**भस्म → भस्माःधवति**

*bhasma* → *bhasmasādbhavati*
ash → becomes ash

**cvi**

There is one more type of nominal prefix worth knowing. This type is quite common:

**कृष्णा → कृष्णीकरोति**

*krṣṇa* → *krṣṇīkaroti*
black → (someone) makes black

**कृष्णा → कृष्णीभवति**

*krṣṇa* → *krṣṇībhavati*
black → (someone) becomes black

In traditional grammar, these prefixes are called *cvi*. (The word *cvi* has a complex technical meaning that is difficult to explain.)

Roughly, here is how we create a *cvi* prefix. The last *a* or *i* of the nominal stem becomes *ī*:

**कृष्णा → कृष्णीकरोति**

*krṣṇa* → *krṣṇīkaroti*
black → (someone) makes black

**शुचि → शुचीकरोति**

*śuci* → *śucīkaroti*
clear, bright → (someone) makes clear
The last \( u \) becomes \( ū \):

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{पशु} & \rightarrow \text{पशुकरोति} \\
paśu & \rightarrow paśukaroti \\
\text{beast, animal} & \rightarrow \text{(someone) makes (someone else) a beast or animal}
\end{align*}
\]

And the last \( r \) becomes \( rt \):

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{मातृ} & \rightarrow \text{मात्रीकरोति} \\
māṭr & \rightarrow mātrikaroti \\
\text{mother} & \rightarrow \text{(someone) makes (someone else their) mother}
\end{align*}
\]
ca, vā, and others

In this lesson, we will learn about many small but common uninflected words. For ease of reference, we will discuss these words in alphabetical order:

\[
\text{अथ एव एवम् इति इव च तु न वा विना सह स्म हि}
\]
\[
atha eva evam iti iva ca tu na vā vinā saha sma hi
\]

**atha** often marks the start of a new topic:

\[
\text{ाथ प्रथमो ध्यायः}
\]
\[
atha prathamo 'dhyāyaḥ
\]
Now begins the first chapter.

**eva** emphasizes the word before it. It can be translated as “indeed” or “truly,” or sometimes as “only” or “alone”:

\[
\text{ना एव लक्ष्मणस्य नाना}
\]
\[
na eva lakṣmaṇasya bhrātā
\]
Rama **truly** is Lakshmana's brother.

\[
\text{अहम् एव बलवान्।}
\]
\[
aham eva balavān.
\]
I **alone** am strong.

**evam** means “thus” or “in that matter”:

\[
\text{स एवम् उवाच।}
\]
\[
sa evam uvāca.
\]
Thus did he speak.

\[
\text{स एवं कृत्वा गृहम् अगच्छत्।}
\]
\[
sa evam kṛtvā grham agacchat.
\]
He, after acting **thus**, went home.

**iti** generally marks the end of a quote or topic:
अहम् बलवान् इति बालो मन्यते
aham balavān iti bālo manyate
The boy thinks that he is strong. (interpretation 1)
The boy thinks, “I am strong.” (interpretation 2)

इति प्रथमो द्यायः
iti prathamo 'dhyāyaḥ
So ends the first chapter.

रामो गतं इति श्रणोति
rāmo gata iti śṛṇoti
He hears that Rama has left. (interpretation 1)
He hears, “Rama has left.” (interpretation 2)

iva means “like” or “as if.” It follows directly after the word it describes. In the examples below, notice how important the case endings are. By using siṃhaḥ in case 1, we describe the case 1 word rāmaḥ. By using mṛgam in case 2, we describe the case 2 word rāvaṇam:

रामः सिंहं इव रावणं हन्ति।
rāmaḥ siṃha iva rāvaṇaṃ hanti.
Rama kills Ravana as if he (Rama) were a lion.

रामो मृगं इव रावणं हन्ति।
rāmo mṛgam iva rāvaṇaṃ hanti.
Rama kills Ravana as if he (Ravana) were a deer.

रामो रावणसं सिंहं मृगं इव हन्ति।
rāmo rāvaṇaṃ siṃho mṛgam iva hanti.
Rama kills Ravana as a lion would a deer.

ca means “and”:

रामः सीता च गच्छतः।
rāmaḥ sītā ca gacchataḥ.
Rama and Sita go.
Rama: सीता गजः च गच्छन्ति।
\( rāmaḥ \ sītā \ gajaḥ \ ca \ gacchati. \)
Rama, Sita, and the elephant go.

\( tu \) means “but” or “however”:

रामो वनं गच्छति। दशरथस् \( tu \) न वनं गच्छति।
\( rāmo \ vanāṃ \ gacchati. \ daśarathas \ tu \ na \ vanāṃ \ gacchati. \)
Rama goes to the forest. But Dasharatha does not go to the forest.

\( na \) means “not”:

रामो न गच्छति।
\( rāmo \ na \ gacchati. \)
Rama doesn’t go.

\( vā \) means “or”:

राम: सीता वा गच्छति।
\( rāmaḥ \ sītā \ vā \ gacchati. \)
Rama or Sita goes.

राम: सीता गजो वा गच्छति।
\( rāmaḥ \ sītā \ gajo \ vā \ gacchati. \)
Rama, Sita, or the elephant goes.

\( vinā \) means “without”:

रामो दशरथेन विना वनं गच्छति।
\( rāmo \ daśarathena \ vinā \ vanāṃ \ gacchati. \)
Rama goes to the forest without Dasharatha.

\( saha \) means “with”:

राम: सीतया सह वनं गच्छति।
\( rāmaḥ \ sītayā \ saha \ vanāṃ \ gacchati. \)
Rama goes to the forest with Sita.
sma often means “indeed” or “truly,” but when it follows a present tense verb, it expresses the past tense:

रामो वने निवसति स्म।
rāmo vane nivasati sma.
Rama lived in the forest.

hi means “after all” or “since”:

रामो रावणं हन्ति। रामो हि रावणादू बलवत्तरः
rāmo rāvanaḥ hanti. rāmo hi rāvanaḥ balavattaraḥ
Rama kills Ravana. After all, Rama is stronger than Ravana.
Adverbs

Adverbs are uninflected words that describe how some action was done:

गजो मन्दं चरति
gajo mandaṃ carati
The elephant walks slowly.

We can change any adjective into an adverb by using it in its neuter case 1 singular form:

मृदु → स मृदु भाषते।
mṛdu → sa mṛdu bhāṣate.
soft → He speaks softly.
Suffixes
The suffix system

Suffixes are meaningful groups of sounds that we add to something else. Sanskrit uses many different suffixes, and these suffixes can cause many different sound changes. So it is important to understand what suffixes mean and what sound changes they cause.

We have already seen several kinds of suffixes. We have seen nominal endings:

\[ \text{नर} + \text{स्य} \rightarrow \text{नरस्य} \]
\[ nara + sya \rightarrow narasya \]
\[ \text{of the man} \]

verb endings:

\[ \text{गच्छ} + \text{ति} \rightarrow \text{गच्छति} \]
\[ gaccha + ti \rightarrow gacchati \]
\[ \text{(someone) goes} \]

and various other suffixes that we use with verbs:

\[ \text{नी} + \text{इ} \rightarrow \text{नायि} \rightarrow \text{नाययति} \]
\[ nī + i \rightarrow nāyi \rightarrow nāyayati \]
\[ \text{lead} \rightarrow \text{make lead} \rightarrow \text{makes lead} \]

But in this topic, we'll focus on all of the other suffixes that Sanskrit has. We can sort these suffixes into two big groups. First are root suffixes, which we add to a verb root:

\[ \text{मन्} + \text{त्र} \rightarrow \text{मन्त्र} \]
\[ man + tra \rightarrow mantra \]
\[ \text{think} + \text{(means)} \rightarrow \text{“means of thinking,” mantra, counsel} \]

\[ \text{नी} + \text{त्र} \rightarrow \text{नेत्र} \]
\[ nī + tra \rightarrow netra \]
\[ \text{lead} + \text{(means) } \rightarrow \text{“means of leading,” an eye} \]

Next are nominal suffixes, which we usually add to a nominal stem:
What sound changes do suffixes cause?

As you can see in the examples above, suffixes can cause many different changes to the roots and stems they attach to.

The most common change is to *strengthen* the last vowel by making it a compound vowel. We saw an example of this with *netra* above:

\[ \text{nī + tra} \rightarrow \text{netra} \]

lead + (means) → “means of leading,” an eye

But suffixes can also cause other kinds of sound changes. For example, some suffixes don’t cause a vowel change at all:

\[ \text{nī + t} \rightarrow \text{nīta} \]

lead + (past suffix) → (has been) led

And others cause the letters *c* and *j* to shift to *k* and *g*:

\[ \text{śuc + a} \rightarrow \text{śoka} \]

grieve + (state) → grief, sorrow
त्यज् + अ → त्याग

\textit{tyaj + a → tyāga}

abandon + (state) → abandoning, relinquishment

\textit{iṭ}

When we add a suffix to a root, sometimes we add an extra \textit{i} sound between the root and the suffix:

\begin{itemize}
  \item \textit{nī + ta → nīta}
  \item lead → led
  \item \textit{vand + i + ta → vandita}
  \item venerate → venerated
\end{itemize}

Traditionally, this \textit{i} sound is called \textit{iṭ}. Some roots use \textit{iṭ}, some roots don't use \textit{iṭ}, and some roots use \textit{iṭ} optionally.

Review

1. In this topic, we will study two groups of suffixes. What are these groups called? What makes one group different from the other?
-tvā and -ya

Also known as: the gerund, the absolutive, the indeclinable or adverbial participle

We will start this topic by learning about the root suffixes -tvā and -ya. Both of these suffixes create uninflected words.

- tvā
Also known as: ktvā

When added to some root that means “X,” -tvā creates a word that means “after X-ing.” In other words, -tvā shows that one action happens before another.

For example, suppose we have these two simple sentences:

रामो लङ्कां गच्छति।
rāmo laṅkāṃ gacchati.
Rama goes to Lanka.

रामो रावणं पश्यति।
rāmo rāvaṇaṃ paśyati.
Rama sees Ravana.

We can combine them like so:

रामो लङ्कां गत्वा रावणं पश्यति
rāmo laṅkāṃ gatvā rāvaṇaṃ paśyati
Rama, after going to Lanka, sees Ravana.

-tvā can cause many sandhi changes. We will discuss these sandhi changes further below.

- ya
Also known as: lyap

-ya has the same meaning as -tvā. If the root uses a verb prefix, we always use -ya. Otherwise, we use -tvā.

For example, if we have these two simple sentences:
Hanumān rāmaṃ pratigacchati.
Hanuman returns to Rama.

Hanumān hrṣyati.
Hanuman rejoices.

Then we can combine them with -ya:

Hanumān rāmaṃ pratigamya hrṣyati.
Hanuman, after returning to Rama, rejoices.

If the root ends in a short vowel, then we add an extra -t after the root:

आहृ → आहृत्य
āhr → āhṛtya
fetch → after fetching

Sound changes for -tvā

Unlike many suffixes, -tvā does not strengthen the root's vowel:

नी → नीत्वा
nī → nītvā
lead → after leading

भू → भूत्वा
bhū → bhūtvā
become → after becoming

कृ → कृत्वा
kr → kṛtvā
do → after doing

As usual, some roots use the connecting īṭ sounds and others do not. Here are some roots that use īṭ:
वन्दि → वन्दित्वा
vand → vanditvā
venerate → after venerating

पठि → पठित्वा
paṭh → paṭhitvā
read, recite → after reading or reciting

If a root ends in a consonant and does not use iṭ, then the root's last consonant sound might contact the -t in -tvā. This contact causes many sandhi changes.

For example, if the root's last sound is a voiced aspirated consonant (gh jh ḍh dh bh h), -tvā usually becomes -dhvā:

लभि → लभ्य
labh → labdha
obtain → obtained

बुधि → बुध्द
budh → buddha
awake → awakened

दहि → दग्ध्वा
dah → dagdhvā
burn → after burning

A root's last -c usually becomes -k:

मुचि → मुक्त
muc → mukta
free, release → freed, released

And its last -j usually becomes either -k or -ṣ:

युजि → युक्ति
yuj → yuktvā
yoke, join → after yoking or joining
 Roots that end in -ā, -e, or -ai often use -i or -ī for their vowels:

स्था → स्थित्वा
sthā → sthitvā
stand → after standing

गै → गीत्वा
gai → gītvā
sing → after singing

Some roots that end in -m or -n lose that sound:

गम् → गत्वा
gam → gatvā
go → after going

हन् → हत्वा
han → hatvā
kill → after killing

मन् → मत्वा
man → matvā
think → after thinking

For some roots, their semivowels become vowels and any other vowel sounds they have are removed. This change is called samprasāraṇa. Here are some examples:

वच् → उत्त्वा
vac → uktvā
speak → after speaking
स्वप्न → सुप्तवा
svap → suptvā
sleep → after sleeping

यज्ञ → इष्टवा
yaj → iṣṭvā
sacrifice → after sacrificing

ग्रहन → गृहितवा
grah → grhitvā
grab → after grabbing

वसन → उषितवा
vas → uṣitvā
live → after living

प्रश्न → प्रश्च
prach → prṣṭvā
ask → after asking

And there are other irregular changes too:

दा → दत्तवा
dā → dattvā
give → after giving

Review

-tvā and -ya are common suffixes that are worth knowing well.
-ta and -tavat

In this lesson, we will learn about two more common suffixes. Both of these suffixes create adjectives.

-ta
Also known as: the past passive participle, the PPP kta

The suffix -ta is important and powerful. When we add it to a root that means “X,” we usually create words that mean “(has) been X-ed.”

Here are some examples of -ta. Note that it causes the same sound changes as -tvā:

नी → नीत
nī → nīta
lead → led

कृ → कृत
kr → kṛta
do, make → done, made

-ta usually creates words that express karmaṇi prayoga. In English, we would say that these words have a passive sense:

रामेन शर: कृत:।
rāmeṇa śaraḥ kṛtaḥ.
By Rama, an arrow has been made.

But if the root implies a sense of motion, it has the normal kartari prayoga sense:

गम् → गत
gam → gata
go → (has) gone

And likewise for other roots, especially if they don't have an object:
Finally, there are some roots where -\(ta\) has a more general sense:

\[\text{शक्} \rightarrow \text{शक्त} \]
\[\text{śak} \rightarrow \text{śakta}\]
be able to \(\rightarrow\) able, capable

**-tavat**

Also known as: the past active participle, \(ktavatu^*\)

The suffix **-tavat** has a similar meaning to **-ta**. When we add it to a root that means “X,” we usually create words that mean “has X-ed.” Here are some examples:

\[\text{श्रु} \rightarrow \text{श्रुतवत्} \]
\[\text{śru} \rightarrow \text{śrutavat}\]
hear \(\rightarrow\) has heard

-\(tavat\) causes all the same sound changes that -\(ta\) does.
In this lesson, we will learn about the root suffix -tum, which creates uninflected words.

When added to some root that means “X,” -tum creates a word that means “to X.” Here are some examples:

अहं खादितुम् इच्छामि।
aham khāditum icchāmi.
I want to eat.

एतान् न हन्तुम् इच्छामि।
etān na hantum icchāmi.
I don't want to kill them.
(Bhagavad Gita 1.34)

We almost always use -tum with another verb. Often, we use -tum words to express that someone wants to do something:

गजः खादितुम् इच्छति।
gajaḥ khāditum icchati.
The elephant wants to eat.

But there are many other verbs that we can use with -tum:

गजः खादितुं शकोति।
gajaḥ khāditum śaknoti.
The elephant is able to eat.

गजः खादितुं जानाति।
gajaḥ khāditum jānāti.
The elephant knows (how) to eat.

गजः खादितुम् आरभते।
gajaḥ khāditum ārabhate.
The elephant begins to eat.
The elephant tries to eat.

The elephant deserves to eat.

And in a more general way, -tum can show the reason that some action was done:

The elephant walks (in order) to eat.

The elephant runs (in order) to eat.

Sound changes

When we add -tum, we strengthen the root’s vowel to the medium level. As usual, some roots don’t use īṭ:

lead → to lead

and others do:

venerate → to venerate

Otherwise, -tum generally causes similar sound changes to -tvā:
Review

-tum is a common suffix that is worth knowing well.
-tavya, -anīya, and -ya

Also known as: the gerundive, the future passive participle, the potential participle, kṛtyāḥ

The suffixes tavya, anīya, and ya all create adjectives, and they all have the same meaning. When added to a root that means “X,” they all mean “should or must be X-ed” or “able to be X-ed.”

Here are some examples:

त्वया वनं गन्तव्यम्।
*tvayā vanam gantavyam.*
By you, the forest must be gone to. (literal translation)
You must go to the forest. (natural translation)

मृगो न हन्तव्यः।
*mṛgo na hantavyaḥ.*
The deer must not be killed.

bhāve prayoga

These suffixes often express bhāve prayoga. When they do, they use the neuter case 1 singular:

योद्धव्यम्
yoddhavyam
There should or must be fighting.

Here is an example from the Bhagavad Gita:

कैर मया सह योद्धव्यम्
*kair mayā saha yoddhavyam*
With whom and me must there be fighting? (literal translation)
With whom must I fight? (natural translation)

-tavya

Also known as: tavya or tavyat
To add -tavya, we follow the same rules as -tum. As usual, some roots use it and some do not:

नी → नेतव्य
nī → netavya
should or must be led

वन्द → वन्दितव्य
vand → vanditavya
should or must be venerated

And as usual, roots that end in consonant sounds might undergo many sandhi changes:

बुध → बोद्धव्य
budh → boddhavya

युध → योद्धव्य
yudh → yoddhavya

-anīya
Also known as: anīyar

-anīya strengthens the root's vowel to the medium level. Otherwise, it does not cause any special sound changes.

कृ → करणीय
kr → karanīya
do → should or must be done

दर्श → दर्शनीय
dṛsh → darśanīya
do → should or must be seen

-ya
Also known as: yat, nyat, kyap, ...

-ya causes various sound changes. Here are some examples:
गै → गेयम्ग

*gai* → *geyam*

sing → should or must be sung

पा → पेयम्

*pā* → *peyam*

drink → should or must be drunk

लभ → लभ्य

*labh* → *labhya*

obtain → should or must be obtained

शक्य → शक्य

*śak* → *śakya*

be able to → able to be done, possible

सह्य → सह्य

*sah* → *sahya*

endure → endurable

कृ → कार्य

*kṛ* → *kārya*

do → should or must be done
-at, -āna, and -vas

This lesson depends on content from *Nominals 1, Verbs 1, and Verbs 2.*

The three suffixes -at, -āna, and -vas all create nominal stems. We attach these suffixes to verb *stems* instead of verb *roots.* Here are some examples of how these suffixes attach to stems of the root *kṛ*:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{kuru} + \text{at} & \rightarrow \text{kurvat} \\
\text{do} & \rightarrow \text{while doing (parasmaipada)} \\
\text{kuru} + \text{āna} & \rightarrow \text{kurvāna} \\
\text{do} & \rightarrow \text{while doing (ātmanepada)} \\
\text{kariṣya} + \text{at} & \rightarrow \text{kariṣyat} \\
\text{do} & \rightarrow \text{about to do} \\
\text{cakṛ} + \text{vas} & \rightarrow \text{cakṛvas} \\
\text{do} & \rightarrow \text{has done}
\end{align*}
\]

- **at**
  Also known as: the present or future active participle, śatṛ

The meaning of *-at* depends on the stem we attach it to. If we attach it to a present tense stem, we get a word that means “while doing X”:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{gaccha} & \rightarrow \text{gacchat} \\
\text{while going}
\end{align*}
\]
कुरु → कुर्वत्
kuru → kurvat
while doing

If we attach it to a simple future tense stem, we get a word that usually means “about to do X”:

गमिष्य → गमिष्यत्
gamiṣya → gamiṣyat
will go → about to go

करिष्य → करिष्यत्
kariṣya → kariṣyat
will do → about to do

We can use -at only with roots that use parasmaipada endings.

Generally, nominal stems that end in -at use two stems: a strong stem that ends in -ant and a weak stem that ends in -at. Certain endings use the strong stem:

अहं चरांतं नरं पश्यामि
ahaṃ carantam naram paśyāmi
I see the man who is walking.
(strong stem)

And others use the weak stem:

अहं चरता नरेण सह वदामि।
ahaṃ caratā nareṇa saha vadāmi.
I speak with the man who is walking.
(weak stem)

However, roots from the hu class use -at as their only stem:

जुहु → जुह्वत्
juhu → juhvat
while offering
-āna
Also known as: the present or future middle participle, śānac

-āna has the same meaning and usage as -at. The difference is that we use -āna with roots that use ātmanepada endings:

\[
\begin{align*}
kuru & \rightarrow \text{kurvāṇa} \\
\text{while doing} & \ (ātmanepada)
\end{align*}
\]

Stems that end with -a use -māna instead:

\[
\begin{align*}
naya & \rightarrow \text{nayamāna} \\
\text{lead} & \rightarrow \text{while leading}
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
nesya & \rightarrow \text{nesyamāna} \\
\text{will lead} & \rightarrow \text{about to lead}
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
kariṣya & \rightarrow \text{kariṣyamāna} \\
\text{will do} & \rightarrow \text{about to do}
\end{align*}
\]

-vas
Also known as: the perfect active participle, kvasu‘

vas is a rare suffix that we use only with the stem of the distant past tense. Usually, it creates stems that mean “has done X”:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{cakṛ} & \rightarrow \text{cakṛvas} \\
\text{did} & \rightarrow \text{did or has done}
\end{align*}
\]

We can use -vas only if the root can use parasmaipada endings:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{jagm} & \rightarrow \text{jagmivas} \\
\text{went} & \rightarrow \text{went or has gone}
\end{align*}
\]
Otherwise, we use -āna:

चक्र → चक्राणा
cakṛ → cakrāṇa
did → did or has done (ātmanepada)

Review

The -at and -āna endings are common and worth knowing well. For details, see our Sentences topic.
Other root suffixes

In this lesson, we will learn about some other common root suffixes. For ease of reference, we will discuss these suffixes in alphabetical order:

अ अक अन इन् तृ त्र
a aka ana in tṛ tra

-a
Also known as: ghañ

-a creates abstract nouns that use masculine endings. When we add -a to a root that means “X,” we get words that mean “the state of X-ing”:

भू → भाव
bhū → bhāva
be, become → the state of being or becoming; existence

मृ → मार
mṛ → māra
die → death

आनन्द् → आनन्द
anand → ānanda
feel blissful → bliss

In this sense, -a often causes a root’s final c and j sounds to become k and g:

युज् → योग
yuj → yoga

शुच् → शोक
śuc → śoka
grieve → grief, sorrow

त्यज् → त्याग
tyaj → tyāga
abandon → abandonment, relinquishment
-aka

Also known as: ṇvul

aka (feminine ikā) creates adjectives. When we add -aka to a root that means “X,” we get words that mean “one who does X”:

कृ → कारक
kr → kāraka
do → doer

पच → पाचक
pac → pācaka
cook → cooker

-ana

Also known as: lyuṭ, lyu

-ana usually creates abstract neuter nouns. When we add -ana to a root that means “X,” we get words that mean “the act of doing X”:

कृ → कारण
kr → karaṇa
do → act of doing; action

इ → अयन
i → ayana
go → act of going; journey

मृ → मरण
mṛ → maraṇa
die → act of dying; death

-ana also creates adjectives (feminine -anī) that mean “one who does X”:

कृ → कारण
kr → karaṇa
do → one that does or causes; the mean of an action


- **-in**

- **-in** (feminine -int) creates adjectives that mean “one who does X”:

  क्रृ → कारिन्
  
kṛ → kārin
  do → doing

- **-tr**

  Also known as: trc

- **-tr** (feminine -trī) creates adjectives that mean “one who does X”:

  क्रृ → कर्त्र
  
kṛ → kartṛ
  do → doer, agent

  नी → नेत्र
  
nī → netṛ
  lead → leader

  युध् → योद्ध
  
yudh → yoddhr
  fight → fighter

The case 7 singular of kartṛ is kartari. We have seen this word in the phrase kartari prayoga (“usage in (the sense of) agent”).

- **-tra**

  Also known as: śtran

- **-tra** usually creates neuter nouns with the sense of “the means of doing X”:
नी → नेत्र

$nī → netra$

lead → by which one is led; an eye

मन् → मन्त्र

$man → mantra$

think → by which thought occurs; a mantra
Nominal suffixes

In this lesson, we will learn about some common nominal suffixes. For ease of reference, we will discuss these suffixes in alphabetical order:

Unless we mention otherwise, none of these suffixes cause any sound changes.

अ इन्क तम तर तस्ता त्व मत्त्म य वत्
a in ka tama tara tas tâ tva mat maya ya vat

-a
Also known as: an

-a often creates adjectives that mean “descending from X” or “of X.” Usually, we strengthen the stem's first vowel to the strongest level. And if the stem ends in -a, we remove the last -a:

कुरु + अ → कौरव
kuru + a → kaurava
descending from Kuru; a Kaurava

इन्द्र + अ → एन्द्र
indra + a → aindra
of Indra

-in
Also known as: ini

-in (feminine: -int) creates adjectives that mean “characterized by X.” If the stem ends in -a, we remove the last -a.

योग + इन्न → योगिन्न
yoga + in → yogin
yoga → characterized by yoga; a yogi

योग + इनी → योगिनी
yoga + inī → yogini
yoga → a female yogi; a yogini
-ka

-ka often creates stems that mean “a little X” or “a dear X”:

पुन्त्र + क → पुन्त्रक
putra + ka → putraka
son → little son, dear son

-tama

Also known as: tamap, gha

-tama (feminine: -tamā) creates adjectives that mean “most X”:

बलवत् + तम → बलवत्तम
balavat + tama → balavattama
strong → strongest

-tara

Also known as: tarap, gha

-tara (feminine: -tarā) creates adjectives that mean “more X”:

सुन्दर + तर → सुन्दरतर
sundara + tara → sundaratara
beautiful → more beautiful

-tas

Also known as: tasi

-tas creates an uninflected word that means “from X.” Due to sandhi, it becomes -taḥ:

अग्नि → अग्नितः
agni → agnitaḥ
fire → from the fire

-tā

Also known as: tal

-tā creates feminine nouns that mean “X-ness” or “the state of being X”: 
योग्य + ता → योग्यता

\(\text{yogya} + \text{tā} \rightarrow \text{yogyatā}\)

useful, appropriate → utility, propriety

-tva

-tva has the same meaning as tā, but it creates neuter stems:

अमर + त्व → अमरत्व

\(\text{amara} + \text{tva} \rightarrow \text{amaratva}\)

immortal → immortality

सम + त्व → समत्व

\(\text{sama} + \text{tva} \rightarrow \text{samatva}\)

same, even → sameness, evenness, equanimity

-mat

Also known as: matūp

-mat (feminine: -matī) creates adjectives that mean “possessing X” or “characterized by X.” Certain stems use -vat instead. See our notes on -vat for details.

हनु + मत् → हनुमत्

\(\text{hanu} + \text{mat} \rightarrow \text{hanumat}\)

jaw → characterized by (prominent) jaws; Hanuman

-maya

Also known as: mayat

-maya (feminine: -mayī) creates adjectives that mean “made of X”:

हिरण्य + मय → हिरण्यमय

\(\text{hiranya} + \text{maya} \rightarrow \text{hiranyamaya}\)

gold → made of gold, golden
-ya

-ya creates neuter nouns with an abstract sense. Usually, we strengthen the stem's first vowel to the strongest level:

सदृश → सादृश्य
sadṛśa → sādṛśya
similar (to) → similarity

-vat

Also known as: vatup

-vat (feminine: -vatī) has the same meaning as -mat. We use -vat if the stem ends in m or a, or if it has m or a as its next-to-last letter:

भग + वि → भगवत्
bhaga + vat → bhagavat
(a is the last letter)

लक्ष्मी + वि → लक्ष्मीवत्
lakṣmī + vat → lakṣmīvat
(m is the next-to-last letter)

Review

Sanskrit has many more nominal suffixes. But these are the most common.
Compounds
The compound system

Compounds (samāsa) are combinations of multiple words. Usually, we combine two words at a time:

रामस्य माता → राममाता
rāmasya mātā → rāmamātā
Rama's mother

We can even combine compounds with other words to make new compounds:

राममातृर गृहम → राममात्रगृहम
rāmamātur gṛham → rāmamātṛgṛham
Rama's mother's house

And we can repeat this process again and again. Some styles of Sanskrit literature use very long compounds.

Compared to using separate words, compounds are ambiguous and lose information:

गजस्य फलम → गजफलम
gajasya phalam → gajaphalam
The elephant's fruit → elephant fruit

गजानां फलम → गजफलम
gajānāṃ phalam → gajaphalam
The elephants' fruit → elephant fruit

But although compounds lose information, compounds are compact and short. If the context is clear, they save a lot of time. And if a sentence is very complex, compounds can even make the sentence clearer and easier to follow.

For this reason, compounds are common in Sanskrit, especially in later compositions.
Four types of compounds

Sanskrit compounds have four basic types. Each of the next four lessons will examine one of these types in more detail.

First is the *dvandva*, which we saw in our series of core lessons. Any set of words that could be combined with the word “and” can be combined into a *dvandva*:

- रामः सीता च → रामसीते
  - rāmaḥ sitā ca → rāmasīte
  - Rama and Sita

- रामः सीता लक्ष्मणः च → रामसीतालक्ष्मणः
  - rāmaḥ sitā lakṣmaṇaḥ ca → rāmasītālakṣmaṇaḥ
  - Rama, Sita, and Lakshmana

Second is the *tatpuruṣa*, which we also saw in our series of core lessons. The idea is that the first word modifies the second in some way, just as a chessboard is a type of board (and not a type of chess):

- रामस्य माता → राममाता
  - rāmasya mātā → rāmamātā
  - Rama’s mother

- रामस्य पुत्रः → रामपुत्रः
  - rāmasya putraḥ → rāmaputraḥ
  - Rama’s son

Third is the *bahuvrīhi*. This is similar to English examples like “graybeard” (a person whose beard is gray) and “blockhead” (a person with a block-like head). The idea is that both words, together, describe someone who is not explicitly mentioned in the compound:

- महान् रथः यस्य → महारथः
  - mahān rathah yasya → mahārathah
  - whose chariot is great → “great-charioted,” a great warrior
Fourth is the *avyayībhāva*. This creates uninflected words. Usually, the first word is itself an uninflected word:

- उप + कृṣ्ण → उपकृष्णम्
  - *upa + kṛṣṇa → upakṛṣṇam*
  - near + Krishna → near Krishna

- यथा + उक्त → यथोक्तम्
  - *yathā + ukta → yathoktam*
  - according to + said → as it was said

### How to tell compounds apart

Each of the compounds above has exactly two words. So how can we tell them apart? As you read more Sanskrit, you will be able to do so instinctively. But until then, here are some basic tips.

The words in a *dvandva* compounds are usually all of the same “type”: all people, all animals, all kinds of weapons, and the like:

- राम: सीता लक्ष्मण: च → रामसीतालक्ष्मणा:
  - *rāmaḥ stītā lakṣmaṇaḥ ca → rāmasītālakṣmaṇaḥ*
  - Rama, Sita, and Lakshmana (all people)

The first word of an *avyayībhāva* is usually an uninflected word:

- यथाशक्ति
  - *yathāśakti*
  - According to one’s power

The *bahuvrīhi* and the *tatpuruṣa* are sometimes difficult to tell apart. But a *bahuvrīhi* is an adjective. For example, a *bahuvrīhi* might describe a masculine noun, but its second word might come from a feminine noun. This happens in the example below:
When you see this mismatch, then you know that the compound is a *bahuvrīhi*.

Otherwise, notice what other words the compound *agrees* with — that is, what other words it matches in gender, case, and number. For example, consider the compound in the sentence below:

\[
\text{दृढ-व्रष्णो नाष्णो गच्छ।}
\]

\[
dṛḍha-vrato rāmo gacchati.
\]

Firm-vow Rama goes.

Here, the compound *dṛḍha-vrataḥ* has two interpretations:

- Rama, who is a firm vow, goes. (*tatpuruṣa*)
- Rama, who is firm-vowed, goes. (*bahuvṛti*)

But only the *bahuvṛti* option makes sense here.

---

**The *bahuvṛti* in older Sanskrit**

In older Sanskrit, the *bahuvṛti* and the *tatpuruṣa* have different accent patterns, so they are much easier to tell apart. Sadly, these accent patterns are not made clear in later Sanskrit.
The *dvandva*

Also known as: the coordinative compound

dvandva literally means “pair.” Any set of words that could be combined with the word *ca* (“and”) can be combined into a *dvandva*:

राम: सीता च → रामसीते

\begin{itemize}
  \item \textit{rāmaḥ sitā ca} → \textit{rāmasīte}
  \end{itemize}
Rama and Sita

राम: सीता लक्ष्मण: च → रामसीतालक्ष्मणा:

\begin{itemize}
  \item \textit{rāmaḥ sitā lakṣmaṇaḥ ca} → \textit{rāmasītālakṣmaṇaḥ}
  \end{itemize}
Rama, Sita, and Lakshmana

In the examples above, notice that the compound’s *number* matches the combined numbers of its items. Thus *rāma-sīte* is in the dual and *rāma-sītā-lakṣmaṇaḥ* is in the plural.

Also, notice that the compound uses the gender of its last item. Thus *rāma-sīte* uses a feminine ending and *rāma-sītā-lakṣmaṇaḥ* uses a masculine ending.

**Two types of dvandva**

The *dvandva* is a simple compound, but it has some small subtleties that are worth knowing. In particular, it has two main subtypes.

The first is the type we saw above, where several different items are listed together. This is called the **itaretara-dvandva** (“one-and-another *dvandva*”):

राम: सीता लक्ष्मण: च → रामसीतालक्ष्मणा:

\begin{itemize}
  \item \textit{rāmaḥ sitā lakṣmaṇaḥ ca} → \textit{rāmasītālakṣmaṇaḥ}
  \end{itemize}
Rama, Sita, and Lakshmana

फलानि पुष्पाणि च → फलपुष्पाणि

\begin{itemize}
  \item \textit{phalāni puṣpāṇi ca} → \textit{phalapuṣpāṇi}
  \end{itemize}
fruits and flowers
But if all of the members imply some more complete collection of concepts, we have a second type called *samāhāra-dvandva* (“collection dvandva”). The *samāhāra-dvandva* is always in the neuter singular:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{आहार-निद्रा-भयम्} \\
\text{āhāra-nidrā-bhayam} \\
\text{food, sleep, and fear} \\
\text{पाणि-पादम्} \\
\text{pāṇi-pādam} \\
\text{hands and feet}
\end{align*}
\]

Here, the compound *āhāranidrābhayam* refers not just to food, sleep, and fear, but to all of the characteristics of animal life more broadly. Likewise, the compound *pāṇipādam* refers not just to hands and feet but to all the limbs of the body.

**Other small changes**

For a few *dvandvas*, the individual words might undergo some small changes. Here are some common examples:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{नाना पतौ} → \text{नाना} \\
\text{mātā pitā ca} → \text{mātāpitarau} \\
\text{mother and father} \\
\text{त्रना वरुणतौ} → \text{त्रना} \\
\text{mitrā varuṇau} \\
\text{Mitra and Varuna (names of Vedic gods)} \\
\text{द्यनावना} → \text{द्यनावना} \\
\text{dyāvā prthivī} \\
\text{heaven and earth}
\end{align*}
\]
Review

The *dvandva* is a simple compound and easy to understand.

1. What is the difference in meaning between an *itaretara-dvandva* and a *samahāra-dvandva*?
2. What gender and number does an *itaretara-dvandva* use?
3. What gender and number does a *samahāra-dvandva* use?
The *tatpuruṣa*

Also known as: the determinative compound

*tatpuruṣa* literally means “his man” or “his servant.” In a *tatpuruṣa* compound, the second word is the main idea and the first word describes it in some way:

*धर्मस्य क्षेत्रम् → धर्मक्षेत्रम्*

ферd of dharma → dharma field

*कुरुणां क्षेत्रम् → कुरुक्षेत्रम्*

field of the Kuru people → Kuru field

Why do we describe this compound with a strange word like *tatpuruṣa*? Part of the reason is that the word “*tatpuruṣa*” is itself a *tatpuruṣa* compound:

*तस्य पुरुष: → तत्पुरुष:

tasya puruṣah → tatpuruṣa

his man

The *tatpuruṣa* is common and has many different varieties. So it is worth knowing well.

**Common tatpuruṣa**

In the most common type of *tatpuruṣa*, the first word describes the second in some way:

*नगरं गत: → नगरगत:*

nagaraṃ gataḥ → nagaragataḥ
gone to the city → city-gone

(case 2)

*नखैर भिन्न: → नखभिन्न:*

nakhair bhinnah → nakhabhinnaḥ
torn by (one's) nails → nail-torn

(case 3)
gave hitam → gohitam
good for a cow → cow-good
(case 4)

caurāt bhayam → caurabhayam
fear of a thief → thief fear
(case 5)

rājīṇaḥ putraḥ → rājaputraḥ
son of a king, prince → king son
(case 6)

ātape śuṣkaḥ → ātapaśuṣkaḥ
dried in the heat → heat dried
(case 7)

Of these, the most common is the case 6 tatpuṣa. In other cases, there are some restrictions on which words we are allowed to use.

**karmadhāraya**

If both words in the tatpuṣa refer to the same idea, we get a special type of tatpuṣa called *karmadhāraya*:

krṣṇaḥ sarpaḥ → krṣṇasarpaḥ
black snake

megha iva śyāmaḥ → meghaśyāmaḥ
cloud dark (as dark as a cloud)
Compounds with *na*

One type of *tatpurusa* uses the word *na* as its first word. This *na* becomes *a* in front of consonants and *an* in front of vowels:

न भावः → अभावः

*na bhāvaḥ → abhāvaḥ*

not existence → absence

*upapada* compounds

The word *upapada* has various meanings. In the context of compounds, an *upapada* is a word that we can create only when making a compound. Here is a classic example:

कुम्भं करोति → कुम्भकारः

*kumbhaṃ karoti → kumbhakāraḥ*

someone who makes pots → pot-maker

The word *kāra* that you see here generally exists only as part of a compound.

Here are a few more examples of *upapada* compounds:

जलं धीयते अस्मिन् → जलधिः

*jalaṃ dhīyate asmin → jaladhiḥ*

water is borne in this → water-bearing, ocean

जलं मुञ्चति → जलमुक्

*jalaṃ muñcati → jalamuk*

it releases water → water-releasing, cloud
The *bahuvrīhi*

Also known as: the possessive compound

*bahuvrīhi* literally means “(having) much rice.” In a *bahuvrīhi* compound, the two compounded words describe an idea that is not explicitly mentioned. Usually, the first word describes the second:

mahān ratho yasya → mahārathaḥ
who has a great chariot → “great-charioted,” a great warrior

pīto ’mbaro yasya → pītāmbaraḥ
who has yellow clothes → yellow-clothed

dṛḍhā vratā yasya → dṛdhavrataḥ
who holds firm vows → firm-vowed

Or sometimes, the relationship is more complex:

cakrami pāṇau yasya → cakrapāṇiḥ
in whose hand is a discus → discus-handed

We have many examples of this compound in English: flatfoot, lowlife, yellow-belly, blockhead, kindhearted, evil-minded, and so on.

Why do we describe this compound with a strange word like *bahuvrīhi*? Part of the reason is that the word “*bahuvrīhi*” is itself a *bahuvrīhi* compound:

bahur vrīhir yasya → bahuvrīhi
who has much rice → “much-riced,” a wealthy person
Using the *bahuvrīhi*

The *bahuvrīhi* is an adjective, regardless of the genders used by its individual words. For example, consider the example below:

स्थितात् प्रजनः यस्य → स्थितप्रजः:

\[ \text{sthitā prajñā yasya → sthitaprajñaḥ} \]

whose discernment is stable → “stable-discernmented”

*prajñā* is a feminine word, but *sthitaprajña* is an adjective that can be used with masculine words.

**Ambiguous compounds**

The *bahuvrīhi* often strongly resembles a *tatpuruṣa*:

टद्व्रत:

\[ \text{dṛḍhavrataḥ} \]

firm vow (*tatpuruṣa* interpretation)

whose vows are firm (*bahuvrīhi* interpretation)

In older Sanskrit, *bahuvrīhi* and *tatpuruṣa* compounds usually have different accents. But in later Sanskrit, we must rely on context to tell these compounds apart.

**Review**

This lesson reminds us of a charming verse:

अहं च तवं च राजेन्द्र लोकनाथावृ उभावपि ।

\[ \text{ahaṃ ca tvāṃ ca rājendra lokanāthāv ubhāvapi} \]

Both I and you, O lord of men, are *loka-nāthas* (world-lords).

बहुव्ररीहहां राजन् पश्चिमपुरुषो भवान् ॥

\[ \text{bahuvrīhirahāṃ rājan ṣaṣṭhitapuruṣo bhavān} \]

I am a *bahuvrīhi*, my king, and you are a case 6 *tatpuruṣa*. 
The speaker, due to his poverty, is someone whom the entire world dominates (loko nātho yasya), and the king is an ordinary lord of the earth (lokasya nāthaḥ).
The *avyayībhāva*

*avyayībhāva* literally means “uninflected state.” Usually, the first word of an *avyayībhāva* is an uninflected word and the second word extends or clarifies the first one:

यथा + शक्ति → यथाशक्ति
*yathā + śakti → yathāśakti*
according to + power → according to one's power

प्रति + पदम् → प्रतिपदम्
*prati + padam → pratipadam*
against, regarding → at every word, for each word

यावत् + जीवम् → यावजीवम्
*yāvat + jīvam → yāvajīvam*
as much as + life → throughout one's life
Sentences
Sentence structure

Sentences are meaningful expressions made from one or more words. Just as sounds combine to express a meaningful word, words combine to create a meaningful sentence.

The lessons in this topic will focus on how words interact to create meaning.

A basic sentence

The most basic Sanskrit sentence is a single verb:


\[
gacchati.\]

(Someone) goes.

We can add other words to this basic sentence to extend or modify its basic meaning. For example, we can express who is performing the act of “going” by adding a nominal word:


\[
rāmo gacchati.\]

Rama goes.

We can also specify the destination of the action:


\[
rāmo vanam gacchati.\]

Rama goes to the forest.

Or various other kinds of information:


\[
rāmo sitayā saha vanam ayodhyāyāh pitre gacchati.\]

Rama goes with Sita to the forest from Ayodhya for his father.

As we add more and more nominal words, we add more and more detail to our original action.
Sentence context

In Sanskrit, we often leave words out of the sentence if the context is clear. Here are some simple examples:

रामो मातरं गच्छति।
\( rāmo mātaram gacchati. \)
Rama goes to his mother.

रामो हस्तं पश्यति।
\( rāmo hastam paśyati. \)
Rama looks at his hand.

If it is clear from context that \( rāma \) is the subject, we can even say this:

मातरं गच्छति।
\( mātaram gacchati. \)
He goes to his mother.

हस्तं पश्यति।
\( hastam paśyati. \)
He looks at his hand.

Verbless sentences

If we use a verb like \( asti \) ("is"), we can express that one thing is another:

रामो राजपुत्रो अस्ति।
\( rāmo rājaputro 'sti. \)
Rama is a prince.

रामो बलवान् अस्ति।
\( rāmo balavān asti. \)
Rama is strong.

If the sentence has no verb, the verb \( asti \) is assumed by default. So we can also rephrase the two examples above to remove \( asti \):
रामो राजपुत्रः।
rāmo rājaputraḥ.
Rama is a prince.

रामो बलवान्।
rāmo balavān.
Rama is strong.

Sentences without a verb are sometimes called verbless sentences. We will learn more about these in a future lesson.
Agreement

In a sentence, multiple words might refer to the same idea. For example, consider these simple sentences:

रामः पृच्छति।
rāmaḥ prcchati.
Rama asks.

रामो योधः।
rāmo yodhaḥ.
Rama is a warrior.

In the first sentence, rāmaḥ shows who performs the action, and prcchati shows the action this performer does. In the second sentence, rāmaḥ shows who is being described, and yodhaḥ describes rāmaḥ.

When two words refer to the same concept, they must use the same gender, case, number, and person. For example, the sentences below are all incorrect because their words don't match:

*रामः पृच्छन्ति।
*rāmaḥ prcchanti.
(Number doesn't match.)

*रामः पृच्छमि।
*rāmaḥ prcchāmi.
(Person doesn't match.)

*रामो योधम्।
*rāmo yodham.
(Gender doesn't match.)

*रामो योधेन।
*rāmo yodhena.
(Case doesn't match.)
This matching is called agreement. In this lesson, we will study agreement in more detail.

**Agreement of two nominals**

Two nominals that refer to the same idea must have the same gender, case, and number:

- कृष्णः सपर्मः  
  \(krṣṇaḥ sarpaḥ\)
  black snake

- कृष्णाः सपर्मः  
  \(krṣṇau sarpaу\)
  two black snakes

- कृष्णः सपांः  
  \(krṣṇāḥ sarpaḥ\)
  many black snakes

- कृष्णाय सपांय 
  \(krṣṇāya sarpaуa\)
  for the black snake

- कृष्णा सपां 
  \(krṣṇā sarpt\)
  (female) black snake

In each example above, one word is the subject (\(sarpaḥ\)) and the other word describes it (\(krṣṇaḥ\)). The genders, cases, and numbers of these words completely match.

If the sentence uses a word like \(ca\) (“and”) to connect multiple nominals, the describing word should match the number of all of its described words together:
रामो योधः ।
rāmo yodhaḥ.
Rama is a warrior.
(singular number)

रामो लक्ष्मणश् च योधः ।
rāmo lakṣmaṇaś ca yodhaḥ.
Rama and Lakshmana are warriors.
(dual number)

रामो लक्ष्मणो भरतश् च योधः ।
rāmo lakṣmaṇo bharataś ca yodhaḥ.
Rama, Lakshmana, and Bharata are warriors.
(plural number)

But if the sentence uses a word like vā (“or”), the describing word usually matches the number of the last word:

रामः सत्यवान् ।
rāmaḥ satyavān.
Rama is truthful.

रामो लक्ष्मणो वा सत्यवान् ।
rāmo lakṣmaṇo vā satyavān.
Rama or Lakshmana is truthful.
(masculine case 1 singular to match lakṣmaṇa)

रामो लक्ष्मणः सीता वा सत्यवती ।
rāmo lakṣmaṇah sītā vā satyavatī.
Rama, Lakshmana, or Sita is truthful.
(feminine case 1 singular to match sītā)

Agreement of nominal and verb

The case 1 nominal and the verb must use the same person:
अहं चरामि
ahaṃ carāmi
I walk.

अहं चर्ये।
ahaṃ carye.
I am walked (to).

त्वं चरसि
tvaṃ carasi
You walk.

त्वं चर्मसे।
tvaṃ caryase.
You are walked (to).

They must also use the same number:

गजस्त्र चरति
gajaś carati
The elephant walks.

गजां चरतः
gajau carataḥ
The two elephants walk.

गजाश् चरन्ति
gajaś caranti
The elephants walk.

This is true even in karmaṇi prayoga:

नरेण्य गजस्त्र चर्यते
nareṇa gajaś caryate
The elephant is walked to by the man.
नरेन गजो चर्यंते
nareṇa gajau caryete
The two elephants are walked to by the man.

नरेन गजाश् चर्यंते
nareṇa gajāś caryante
The elephants are walked to by the man.

If ca or vā is used, we follow rules similar to those described above:

रामो गजश् च चरात:।
rāmo gajaś ca carataḥ.
Rama and the elephant walk.

रामो गजो वा चरति।
rāmo gajo vā carati.
Either Rama or the elephant walks.
Verbless sentences

If a sentence has no verb, we assume the verb asti by default. So, the two sentences below have essentially the same meaning:

रामो राजपुत्रो दस्ति।
rāmo rājaputro 'sti.
Rama is a prince.

रामो राजपुत्रः।
rāmo rājaputraḥ.
Rama (is) a prince.

Roughly, there are three types of verbless sentences. In this lesson, we will learn about these three types.

Two nominals in case 1

The most common verbless sentence has two nominals in case 1. We use this type of sentence to express that one item is another:

रामो राजपुत्रः।
rāmo rājaputraḥ.
Rama (is) a prince.

रामो बलवान्।
rāmo balavān.
Rama is strong.

Having or owning

We also commonly see sentences where one noun is in case 6. We use this type to show that one noun owns or has another:

दशरथस्य पुत्रः।
daśarathasya putraḥ.
Dasharatha has a son.
Dasharatha has strength.

Dasharatha has a city.

Dasharatha has happiness.

(Less literally, “Dasharatha is happy.”)

Other sentences

We can create other verbless sentences by using special uninflected words. Here is a small example:

Enough of this.
Questions

In this lesson, we will learn about the different ways we can ask questions in Sanskrit.

**kim**

The most straightforward way we can ask a question is to use the pronoun *kim*. *kim* means “who?” or “what?” and its specific meaning is usually clear from context. We can use *kim* to precisely ask about different parts of a sentence.

For example, suppose someone says the following:

राहुलो कौतूहलादु वानराय फलं ददाति।
rahulo kautūhalād vānarāya phalam dadāti.
Rahula gives the monkey a fruit out of curiosity (“from curiosity”).

We can use *kim* to ask a question like this:

को वानराय फलम् ददाति।
ko vānarāya phalam dadāti.
Who gives a fruit to the monkey?

Usually, someone would answer like this:

राहुलः।
rahulaḥ.
Rahula.

Likewise, we can ask other questions and give other answers:

राहुलः कस्मे फलं ददाति।
rahulaḥ kasmē phalam dadāti.
To whom does Rahula give a fruit?

वानरः।
vānarāya.
To the monkey.
राहुलो वानराय किं ददाति?
*rāhulo vānarāya kim dadāti?*
What does Rahula give the monkey?

फलम्।
*phalam.*
A fruit.

राहुलः कस्माद वानराय फलं ददाति।
*rāhulah kasmād vānarāya phalaṃ dadāti.*
From what (cause) does Rahula give a fruit to the monkey?

कौतूहलात्।
*kautūhalāt.*
From curiosity.

In many styles of Sanskrit, the word *kim* can also mean “why.” This usage is very common in the *Ramayana* and the *Mahabharata*:

किं मां हन्तुम इच्छस।
*kim māṃ hantum icchasi.*
Why do you want to kill me?

To learn more about the specific endings that the *kim* pronoun uses, see our lesson on *kim* and *yad*.

**Yes-no questions**

**Yes-no questions** are questions whose answers are usually “yes” or “no.”

In Sanskrit, we can ask yes-no questions in many different ways. One common way is to put the word *api* at the beginning of the sentence:

अपि त्वं सुखिः।
*api tvam sukhī.*
Are you happy?
Another style is to put the word *kim* at the beginning or end of the sentence. If you know Hindi, this is similar to how we use the Hindi word क्या:

कि त्वं सुखी।

*kim tvam sukht.*

Are you happy?

त्वं सुखी किम्।

*tvam sukht kim.*

Are you happy?

Note that *kim* could indicate either a yes-no question or a “why?” question. The specific meaning depending on the context and style. In newer styles of Sanskrit, it usually indicates a yes-no question.

One other style is to use the word *kaccit*. When we use this word, we hope or expect that the answer is “yes”:

कच्चि त्वं सुखी।

*kaccit tvam sukht.*

Are you happy? (I hope you are.)

We can answer these questions in a few different ways. Usually, we repeat part of the question:

अहं सुखी।

*aham sukht.*

I am happy.

अहं न सुखी।

*aham na sukht.*

I am not happy.

Or in informal settings, we can use the words *ām* (“yes”) or *na* (“no”):
Yes, I am happy.

**kutra, kadā, and others**

There are various other words that we can use to ask questions. Here are some common uninflected words:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>कथम्</td>
<td>in what way? how?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>katham</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>कदा</td>
<td>when?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kadā</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>किमर्थम्</td>
<td>for what reason? why?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kimartham</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>कुतः</td>
<td>from what? for what reason?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kutahi</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>कुत्र</td>
<td>where?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kutra</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>क्वा</td>
<td>where?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kva</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note that *kutra* and *kva* have the same meaning. *kutra* is more common in older Sanskrit.

Finally, here are some common adjectives:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>कियत्</td>
<td>how much?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kiyaṭ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>कीद्रशा</td>
<td>of what kind?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kṛḍrśa</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Relative phrases

Relative phrases are phrases like this:

अहम् अपदर्य नरं यो गजम् अचौरयत्।
aham apaśyam naraṃ yo gajam acorayat.
I saw the man who stole the elephant.

स नरो गच्छति यत्र वहवो गजा वसन्ति।
sa naro gacchati yatra bahavo gajā vasanti.
That man is going where many elephants live.

गजा भीता भवन्ति यदा चोरम् पदयन्ति।
gajā bhītā bhavanti yadā coram paśyanti.
Elephants become scared when they see the thief.

Relative phrases are one way we can create complex Sanskrit sentences. In this lesson, we will learn about many different kinds of relative phrases.

yad

The most straightforward way we can make a relative phrase is to use the pronoun yad. We can use it to precisely describe different parts of a sentence. For example, suppose someone says the following:

राहुलो नगरं चरति।
rāhulo nagaram carati.
Rahula walks to the city.

We can make phrase like this:

राहुलो यो ग्रामे वसति नगरं चरति।
rāhulo yo grāme vasati nagaram carati.
Rahula, who lives in the village, walks to the city.

The pronoun yad uses the same gender and number as the word it describes. But it can use different cases:
राहुलो यम् माता मार्गति नगरं चरति।
rāhulo yam mātā mārgati nagaraṃ carati.
Rahula, whom his mother is searching for, walks to the city.

राहुलो यस्य पिता योधो नगरं चरति।
rāhulo yasya pitā yodho nagaraṃ carati.
Rahula, whose father is a warrior, walks to the city.

To learn more about the specific endings that the yad pronoun uses, see our lesson on kim and yad.

Using yad with tad

We can use yad with pronouns like tad (“that”) to create even more complex sentences. In each sentence below, the highlighted pronouns have the same gender and number. But by using different cases, we can show different relationships:

या प्रृच्छिति सा रामस्य पत्नी।
yā prcchati sā rāmasya patnī.
Who asks, she is Rama's wife. (literal translation)
The person who asks is Rama's wife. (natural translation)

यस्ये राम: फलं ददाति सा रामस्य पत्नी
yasyai rāmaḥ phalam dadāti sā rāmasya patnī
to whom Rama gives a fruit, she is Rama's wife. (literal)
The person to whom Rama gives a fruit is Rama's wife. (natural)

यस्ये राम: फलं ददाति तस्या: पिता जनकः:
yasyai rāmaḥ phalam dadāti tasyaḥ pitā janakaḥ
to whom Rama gives a fruit, her father is Janaka. (literal)
The father of the one to whom Rama gives a fruit is Janaka. (natural)

Note the small difference in emphasis if we switch the order of these pronouns:
The two English translations are quite different. But the Sanskrit remains simple and clear.

*yatra, yadā, and others*

There are various other words that we can use to create relative phrases. Here are some common uninflected words:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>यथा</td>
<td>in which way</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yathā</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>यदाः</td>
<td>when</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yadā</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>यदर्थम्</td>
<td>for which reason</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yadartham</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>यत:</td>
<td>from what, for what reason</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yataḥ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>यत्र</td>
<td>where</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yatra</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

These words are often paired with the words below:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>तथा</td>
<td>in that way</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tathā</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>तदा</td>
<td>then</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tada</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>तदर्थम्</td>
<td>for that reason</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tadartham</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ततः</td>
<td>from that, for that reason</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tataḥ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>तत्र</td>
<td>there</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tatra</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Likewise, here are some common adjectives:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>यावत्</td>
<td>so much</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yāvat</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>याद्रश</td>
<td>of which kind</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>yādṛśa</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

And the adjectives they are often paired with:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>तावत्</td>
<td>that much</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tāvat</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ताद्रश</td>
<td>of that kind</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tādṛśa</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Participles

In English grammar, the word participle refers to certain kinds of verbal adjectives. The following words are all examples of participles:

- कुर्वन्
  kurvan
  while doing

- कारिष्यन्
  kariṣyan
  about to do

- कृतम्
  kṛtam
  (has been) done

- कृतवान्
  kṛtavān
  (has) done

- कर्तव्यम्
  kartavyam
  should or must be done

Roughly, a participle is just a way to show that we perform one action that is related to another:

- अहं गायनं चरामि।
  aham gāyan carāmi.
  I walk while singing.

- रामस् चरनं चखाद।
  rāmaś caran cakhāda.
  Rama ate while walking.
In this lesson, we will learn more about how these different participles can be used.

**Basic participles**

The most basic way to use a participle is as a normal adjective:

अहं नृत्यन्न गायामि।

*aham nṛtyan gāyāmi.*

I sing while dancing.

अहं खादन्तं सिंहं पश्यामि।

*aham khādantam siṃham paśyāmi.*

I see a lion (who is) eating.

Since participles are *verbal* adjectives, they behave somewhat like verbs. So, we can use them with other nominal words:

अहं राज्ञे नृत्यन्न गायामि।

*aham rājne nṛtyan gāyāmi.*

I sing while dancing for the king.

अहम् मांसस्म खादन्तं सिंहं पश्यामि।

*aham māṃsam khādantam siṃham paśyāmi.*

I see a lion (who is) eating meat.

**Simultaneous action with case 7**

*Also known as: the locative absolute*

We often use participles to show that as one action is happening, another also happens. When we use participles this way, we often imply a connection between the two actions.

Usually, we show this by using the participle and the word it describes in case 7. For example, if we have these two simple sentences:

दशरथं शोचति।

*daśarathāḥ śocati.*

Dasharatha grieves
रामो वनं गच्छति।
*rāmo vanam gacchati.*
Rama goes to the forest.

Then we can connect them like so:

दशरथे शोचति रामो वनं गच्छति।
*daśarathe śocati rāmo vanam gacchati.*
In Dasharatha grieving, Rama goes to the forest. (literal translation)
As Dasharatha grieves, Rama goes to the forest. (natural translation)

The word *śocati* here is an adjective in the case 7 singular. It is easily confused with the normal verb *śocati*. See our lesson on consonant stems for details on why this word looks the way it does.

We can use this same structure with other participles too:

रामे वनं गमिष्यति कैकेर्यी हर्ष्यति।
*rāme vanam gamisyati kaikeyī hṛṣyati.*
With Rama about to go to the forest, Kaikeyi rejoices.

रामे वनं गच्छति कैकेर्यी हर्ष्यति।
*rāme vanam gacchati kaikeyī hṛṣyati.*
With Rama going to the forest, Kaikeyi rejoices.

रामे वनं गते कैकेर्यी हर्ष्यति।
*rāme vanam gate kaikeyī hṛṣyati.*
With Rama gone to the forest, Kaikeyi rejoices.

**Simultaneous action with case 6**
Also known as: the genitive absolute

Just as we can express simultaneous actions with case 7, we can do the same with case 6. Usually, the meaning is that one action happens *in spite of or even as another one occurs*: 
Even as Dasharatha grieves, Rama goes to the forest.

The word śocataḥ here is an adjective in the case 6 singular. It is not the normal verb śocataḥ. See our lesson on consonant stems for details.
The eight cases

Sanskrit has eight different cases. These cases can each express many different meanings, but each has a basic meaning that is easy to remember. And if we need to, we can modify this basic meaning by using extra uninflected words.

**Case 1**

Also known as: the nominative case, prathamā vibhaktiḥ (“first division”)

**Case 1** can be thought of as the *default* case. Usually, it refers to the subject of the action:

\[\text{सिंहः} \text{खादति।} \]
\[sinhāḥ khādati.\]
The lion eats.

But this depends on the *prayoga* of the verb. In the two sentences below, note the difference in meaning, even though both sentences use case 1:

\[\text{सिंहः} \text{खाद्यते।} \]
\[sinhāḥ khādyate.\]
(The lion is the object of the sentence.)

Case 1 also has special uses in verbless sentences. For details, see the lesson on verbless sentences:

\[\text{अश्वः} \text{कृष्णः।} \]
\[aśvah krṣṇah.\]
The horse is black.
अश्वो रामस्य।

aśvo rāmasya.
The horse is Rama’s.

Case 2
Also known as: the accusative case, dvitīyā vibhaktiḥ (“second division”)

Case 2 is generally the object of the action:

सिंहो ग्रामं पश्यति।

siṃho grāmaṃ paśyati.
The lion sees a village.

It is also used for destinations:

सिंहो ग्रामं गच्छति।

siṃho grāmaṃ gacchati.
The lion goes to the village.

Or for time and distance:

स मासम् अधीते

sa māsam adhīte
He studied for a month.

स योजनं चरति।

sa yojanaṃ carati.
He walked a yojana.
(A yojana is around 15 kilometers.)

Case 2 is also used with specific uninflected words like antarā, antareṇa, rte, and prati:

अन्तिना ग्रहं च वृक्षं च गजः।

antarā grhaṃ ca vrksam ca gajaḥ.
There is an elephant between the house and the tree.
अन्तरेण विच्यं, किं शक्यम्?
antareṇa vidyāṁ, kim śakyam?
Without knowledge, what is possible?

ऋते ऋप त्वं ते सुखिनो भविष्यन्ति।
ṛte 'pi tvāṁ te sukhino bhaviṣyanti.
Even without you, they will be happy.

ग्रहं प्रति भाषामहे।
grham prati bhaṣamahe.
Let's talk about the house.

Case 3
Also known as: the instrumental case, tṛtīyā vibhaktiḥ (“third division”)

Case 3 generally means “with” or “by means of”:

सिंहो मार्गेण ग्रामं गच्छति।
simho mārgena grāmaṁ gacchati.
The lion goes to the village by means of the road.

अहं धनुषा मृगं हन्निः।
aham dhanuṣa mṛgaṁ hanmi.
I kill the deer with (my) bow.

For verbs in karmanī or bhāve prayoga, case 3 defines the agent of the action:

रामेण रावणो हन्यते
rāmeṇa rāvaṇo hanyate
Ravana is killed by Rama.
(karmanī prayoga)

मया सुप्यते।
mayā supyate.
I sleep. (“By me, there is sleeping.”)
(bhāve prayoga)
We can also use this case with words like saha (“with”) or vinā (“without”) to show a sense of accompaniment:

राम: सीतया सह वनं गच्छति।
rāmaḥ stitayā saha vanam gacchati.
Rama goes to the forest with Sita.

रामो दशरथेन विना वनं गच्छति।
rāmo daśarathena vinā vanam gacchati.
Rama goes to the forest without Dasharatha.

Case 4
Also known as: the dative case, caturthī vibhaktiḥ (“fourth division”)

Case 4 generally means “for” or “for the sake of”:

सिंहो मांसाय ग्रामं गच्छति।
simho māṃsāya grāmaṁ gacchati.
The lion goes to the village for meat.

सिंह: खादनाय ग्रामं गच्छति।
simhaḥ khādanāya grāmaṁ gacchati.
The lion goes to the village for eating (“to eat”).

For verbs that express anger, jealousy, or blame, case 4 defines the target of the emotion:

रामो रावणाय कुश्यति।
rāmo ravaṇāya krudhyati.
Rama is angry at Ravana.

कैकेयी कौसल्याय ईश्यति।
kaikeyī kausalyāyai īrṣyati.
Kaikeyi is jealous of Kausalya.

(kausalyāyai becomes kausalyā due to sandhi)

Case 5
Also known as: the ablative case, pañcamī vibhaktiḥ (“fifth division”)
Case 5 generally means “from” or “because of”:

नर: वनाद ग्रामं गच्छति।

*naraḥ vanād grāmaṃ gacchati.*
A man goes from the forest to the village.

नर: भयाद गृहं गच्छति।

*naraḥ bhayād gṛham gacchati.*
The man goes home from (because of) fear.

For verbs that express fear or protection, case 5 defines the cause of fear:

अहम् रावणाद भीतः:

*aham rāvaṇād bhītaḥ*
I am scared of Ravana.

अहम् बालं सिंहाद रक्षामि।

*aham bālaṃ siṃhād rakṣāmi.*
I protect the boy from the lion.

If someone is being born, case 5 defines the father:

कृष्णो वसुदेवाद देवक्यां जजङे

*kṛṣṇo vasudevād devakyāṁ jajñe*
Krishna was born from Vasudeva in Devaki.

In a comparison, case 5 has the sense of “than” or “compared to”:

सिंहो नराद बलवत्तरः।

*siṃho narād balavattaraḥ.*
The lion is stronger than the man.

Case 5 can also be used with words like ā and apa:

आ वनात्

*ā vanāt*
up to the forest
away from the forest

Case 6
Also known as: the genitive case, saṣṭhī vibhaktiḥ (“sixth division”)

Case 6 generally means “of.” Generally, it expresses some connection between two nominals:

सिंहो नरस्य गृहं गच्छति।

\( \text{siṃho narasya grham gacchati.} \)

The lion goes to the house of the man (or, the man’s house).

सिंहो नरस्य मांसं खादति।

\( \text{siṃho narasya māmsaṃ khādati.} \)

The lion eats the meat of the man.

Generally, case 6 is a “catch-all” case that we use if no other case applies. In the \( \text{Ramayana} \) and the \( \text{Mahabharata} \), it often expresses the same meanings as case 4:

रामं देहि तस्य।

\( \text{rāmaṃ dehi tasya.} \)

Give Rama to him.

Case 7
Also known as: the locative case, saṣṭampī vibhaktiḥ (“seventh division”)

Case 7 generally means “in” or “on”:

नरो सिंहे शस्त्रि।

\( \text{naro siṃhe 'sti.} \)

The man is in the lion.

सिंहो ग्रामे चरति।

\( \text{siṃho grāme carati.} \)

The lion walks in the village.

If someone is being born, case 7 defines the mother:
More abstractly, case 7 describes the context of something:

When Rama had gone (in Rama's having gone), Dasharatha became unhappy.

In this matter, who is capable?

Case 8

Also known as: the vocative case, sambodhana ("address")

Case 8 addresses the person being spoken to:

Hey man! You have been eaten.

Hey lion! Go to the forest.

Review

The eight cases have several other minor uses. But this lesson summarizes the major patterns you will see and hear.
Devanagari
How Devanagari works

If you can already read another language that uses Devanagari, please see our note at the bottom of this lesson.

Devanagari (देवनागरी) is a script that is used to write languages like Hindi, Marathi, and Nepali. In modern times, it is the script most commonly used to write Sanskrit.

Devanagari is written from left to right and closely follows how Sanskrit is pronounced. If you hear a Sanskrit word, you will know exactly how to write it in Devanagari. And if you see a word written in Devanagari, you will know exactly how to pronounce it.

In the Latin script, one letter follows right after the other, from left to right. But in Devanagari, symbols are usually grouped into syllables:

दे व ना गरी
_de va na ga rī_
Devanagari

सः स्क्रः त मः
_saṃ skṛ ta m_
Sanskrit

Each syllable has at most one vowel. And where possible, syllables should not end with consonants.

By default, the symbols for consonants have the vowel sound a pronounced after them:

दे व ना गर
_da va na ga ra_

सः स्कः त मः
_sa ska ta ma_
So to express the specific sounds we need, we must add extra marks to these consonants:

- द → दे
  - da → de
- न → ना
  - na → nā
- र → री
  - ra → rī
- स → सं
  - sa → saṃ
- स्क → स्कृ
  - ska → skṛ
- म → मू
  - ma → m

Also, notice that ska (स्क) is a combination of two other consonant symbols:

- सू + क → स्क
  - s + ka → ska

Sanskrit has many consonant clusters, so when we write Sanskrit in Devanagari, we must use many different consonant combinations. For details, see the lesson on consonant clusters later in this topic.

Finally, the traditional practice when writing Sanskrit texts is to write words continuously, especially if words end with consonants:

- फलमू इच्छामि → फलमिच्छामि
  - phalam icchāmi → phalamicchāmi

This is the basic idea of how Devanagari works.
Devanagari for Sanskrit

(This note is for those who can read another language in Devanagari.)

In Sanskrit, क is always pronounced as *ka*, **never** as *k*. Likewise for all consonant sounds. So, words like राम, अर्जुन, and योग are pronounced as *rāma*, *arjuna*, and *yoga*, **never** as *rām* or *arjun* or *yog*.

Sanskrit uses many consonant clusters that don’t often appear in Hindi or other modern Indian languages. So even if you are comfortable reading Devanagari already, please see our lesson on consonant clusters.
Vowels and consonants

In this lesson, we will learn how to write vowels and consonants in Devanagari.

Vowels

When vowels do not follow consonants, they are written like this:

अ  आ  इ  ई  उ  ऊ  ऋ  ऍ  ए  ऐ  ओ  औ
a  ā  i  ī  u  ū  r̥  r̄  e  āi  o  au

We include the long vowel ऊ here for the sake of being complete, but it is never used in real Sanskrit.

In general, short and long vowels are written in a similar way. Notice the similarities between अ and आ, इ and ई, उ and ऊ, ऋ and ऍ, ए and ऐ, ओ and औ. This pattern also applies to ए and ऐ, as well as ओ and औ. In each pair, notice that the second symbol adds some mark or extra feature to the first.

Consonants

When we write Sanskrit in Devanagari, all consonants are pronounced with the vowel a by default. So, the symbol क is always pronounced as ka, never as k.
Some of these consonants are difficult to tell apart at first. Here are the consonants that are most easily confused:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>क</th>
<th>ख</th>
<th>ग</th>
<th>घ</th>
<th>ङ</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ka</td>
<td>kha</td>
<td>ga</td>
<td>gha</td>
<td>na</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>च</td>
<td>छ</td>
<td>ज</td>
<td>झ</td>
<td>ञ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ca</td>
<td>cha</td>
<td>ja</td>
<td>jha</td>
<td>na</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ट</td>
<td>ठ</td>
<td>ड</td>
<td>ढ</td>
<td>ण</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ta</td>
<td>tha</td>
<td>da</td>
<td>dha</td>
<td>na</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>प</td>
<td>फ</td>
<td>ब</td>
<td>भ</td>
<td>म</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pa</td>
<td>pha</td>
<td>ba</td>
<td>bha</td>
<td>ma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>य</td>
<td>र</td>
<td>ल</td>
<td>व</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ya</td>
<td>ra</td>
<td>la</td>
<td>va</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>श</td>
<td>ष</td>
<td>स</td>
<td>ह</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>śa</td>
<td>ša</td>
<td>sa</td>
<td>ha</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**ख रव**

*kha rava*

**घ ध**

*gha dha*
As you learn these symbols, it may help to make mnemonics to keep them distinct in your head. For example:

- घ is a “g” sound, and it looks like a gut full of gas.
- ङ is a nasal sound, and its dot looks like a nose ring.
- च is a “c” sound and looks like a chewing mouth.
- छ is a “j” sound and looks like a sharp javelin.
- ब and भ are “b” sounds, and they look broken.

Of course, the mnemonics that stick best are the ones you think of yourself.
Vowel marks

Vowels that follow consonants are written as small “marks” around the consonant they follow:

क + आ → का
\( ka + ā \rightarrow kā \)

क + उ → कू
\( ka + u \rightarrow kū \)

Here are the marks that we use when writing Sanskrit:

\[
\begin{array}{cccccc}
क & का & कि & की & कु & कू \\
kā & kā & ki & kī & ku & kū \\
ktṛ & kṛ & kṛ & kḷ & kḹ & kḍ \\
ke & kai & ko & kau \\
\end{array}
\]

Again, we include the long vowel \( kḹ \) (\( kḍ \)) for the sake of being complete, but it is never used in real Sanskrit.

The important point to remember here is that the vowel \( a \) has no special mark. \( a \) is present by default. If needed, we can block that default \( a \) sound with a mark called the \textit{virāma}, which we discuss further below.

Most consonants use these marks in a regular way. But perhaps the combinations below will be surprising:
anusvāra, visarga, candrabindu, and virāma

The anusvāra and visarga are written as follows:

अं
kaṃ

The candrabindu ("moon dot") shows that a sound is pronounced nasally. It is usually used for nasal vowels:

कँ
kaṃ̐

Finally, the virāma ("cessation") blocks the default a sound that a consonant has otherwise:

कः
kā
Consonant clusters

A consonant cluster is a group of consecutive consonants with no vowel sounds between them. Consonant clusters are common in Sanskrit, so they are common when we write Sanskrit in Devanagari.

Not all styles of Devanagari will use all of these consonant clusters. And, the clusters you will see online depend greatly on how well your computer supports these clusters.

First, here are the two clusters you absolutely must know:

\[ kṣa \quad jña \]

Why must we know these two clusters? These two clusters do not resemble their original consonants at all, so we cannot guess what sounds they represent. That is why we must learn them separately.

Now, let's consider the other consonant clusters. Notice that most Devanagari consonants have a single vertical line running from top to bottom. Usually, this line is on the right side of the consonant:

\[ ta \quad ṇa \quad sa \]

In many consonant clusters, the first consonant loses this line and attaches to the consonant that follows it:

\[ tsa \quad ṇḍa \quad sta \]
If ra is the first consonant, we simply add a small hook to the top of the second:

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\text{र्म} & \text{र्न} & \text{र्म} \\
\text{rta} & \text{rna} & \text{rma}
\end{array}
\]

If ra is second, we add a small tick to the first consonant:

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\text{प्र} & \text{क्र} & \text{त्र} \\
pra & kra & tra
\end{array}
\]

But consonants with a “hoop” shape (like ट,ठ, and ड) use a different symbol instead:

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\text{ट्र} & \text{ठ्र} & \text{ढ्र} \\
\text{tra} & \text{thra} & \text{tha}
\end{array}
\]

If na is second, we write it in the same way as ra:

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\text{प्र} & \text{क्र} & \text{त्र} \\
pna & kna & tna
\end{array}
\]

If ha or da is first and ya or ma is second, we get these combinations:

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\text{द्य} & \text{द्म} & \text{ह्य} & \text{ह्म} \\
dya & dma & hya & hma
\end{array}
\]

If śa is first, it becomes a smaller form that sits on top of the second consonant:
If \( \text{ṣ}a \) is first, it often stacks vertically on top of the consonants that follow it:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{ष्ट} & \quad \text{ष्ठ} \\
\text{ṣṭa} & \quad \text{ṣṭha} \\
\text{ष्ठ्व} & \\
\text{ṣṭhva}
\end{align*}
\]

Voiced aspirated consonants that follow \( \text{da} \) usually “dangle” off the bottom of the \( \text{da} \):

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{ध} & \quad \text{ध्व} \\
\text{dgha} & \quad \text{ddha} & \quad \text{dbhha}
\end{align*}
\]

\( \text{ta} \) combines in various ways that are hard to predict:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{क्त} & \\
\text{kta} & \\
\text{त्त} & \quad \text{tta}
\end{align*}
\]

And if three or more consonants are in a cluster, we sometimes get more complex combinations:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{त्र} & \quad \text{स्त्र} \\
\text{ttra} & \quad \text{stra} \\
\text{ंक्ख्य} & \quad \text{ंक्ष्य} & \quad \text{ंक्त्य} \\
\text{ṅkhya} & \quad \text{ṅkṣya} & \quad \text{ṅktya}
\end{align*}
\]
Numerals and punctuation

In this lesson, we will learn how to write numbers and various punctuation marks in Devanagari.

Numerals

The numerals that we use in English originate in India. As a result, the numerals we use in Devanagari are quite similar to the ones we use in English:

0  1  2  3  4
० १ २ ३ ४

5  6  7  8  9
५ ६ ७ ८ ९

And they are used just like English numerals:

1९४७
1947

२०२१
2021

Punctuation

Modern Sanskrit texts make use of various English punctuation marks, including exclamation points (!), commas (,), and quotation marks (“”).

But traditionally, Devanagari uses only a small set of punctuation marks. You can see all of them below:

। ॥ १
। ॥ ।
The first is called the **daṇḍa** (“stick”), which marks the end of a sentence or the middle point of a verse:

रामो गच्छति।

rāmo gacchati.

Rama goes.

The second is sometimes called a double daṇḍa, and it marks the end of a paragraph or verse:

रामो लण्काम गच्छति। रामो रावणं हन्ति॥

rāmo laṅkāṃ gacchati. rāmo rāvaṇaṃ hanti.

Rama goes to Lanka. Rama kills Ravana.

The last is called the **avagraha**, and it is sometimes used to show that a vowel was removed due to a sound change rule:

श्वेत: अश्व: → श्वेतो तथ:  
śvetaḥ aśvaḥ → śveto 'śvah  
white horse

ते अश्व: → ते तथा:  
te aśvah → te 'śvah  
They are horses.

An avagraha may even be repeated if the vowel removed was long:

सा आस्ते → सा तत्स्ते  
sā āste → sā "ste  
She sits.
Old Devanagari

Certain Devanagari letters have older versions that are no longer commonly used. You can see these older versions below:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Old Devanagari</th>
<th>New Devanagari</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>अ</td>
<td>अ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>आ</td>
<td>आ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ओ</td>
<td>ओ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>औ</td>
<td>औ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>र</td>
<td>र</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ळ</td>
<td>ळ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ण</td>
<td>ण</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Vedic Devanagari

In this lesson, we have a few small notes on writing Vedic Sanskrit with Devanagari.

ḷa and ḷha

In some styles of Vedic recitation, the consonants ḍa and ḍha become ḷa and ḷha respectively. Here is how to write these two sounds in Devanagari:

\[\text{ḷa}\] ḷa

\[\text{ḷha}\] ḷha

Accent

When we write Vedic Sanskrit in Devanagari, we often use many accent marks to show how a vowel should be pronounced. Most commonly, we see just three accents: anudātta, udātta, and svarita.

In modern recitation, the anudātta is usually a low tone and the svarita is usually a high tone. The udātta is usually a middle tone that exists between these two. Here is how the anudātta, udātta, and svarita are usually written:

\[\text{अ} \quad \text{अ॒} \quad \text{अअ॑}\]

\[\text{अ} \quad \text{अ} \quad \text{अ}^]'

Note that udātta has no explicit mark and is assumed by default.
Other scripts
Romanized Sanskrit

The alphabet that we use in English is sometimes called the Roman alphabet. Romanized Sanskrit is the general term for any Sanskrit text that is written in the Roman alphabet.

Romanized Sanskrit became popular among Western scholars when they encountered Sanskrit for the first time, and it became more established in the 19th century. But even though that era has long passed, romanized Sanskrit is still often used today. This is for a few reasons:

- If you can read Roman letters already, it's easy to learn and read romanized Sanskrit.
- Romanized Sanskrit doesn't lose any information. That is, we can always convert it back to Devanagari or another script.
- Romanized Sanskrit is often easier to use with computers.

Today, it is easier than ever to display Sanskrit in Devanagari or another Indian script. But even so, it is useful to know about romanized Sanskrit and how to use it.

IAST

The *International Alphabet for Sanskrit Transliteration*, or IAST for short, became common among Western scholars in the 19th century. You can see the IAST letters below:
ISO-15919

ISO-15919 is the modern standard for romanizing all Indian languages, including Sanskrit. “ISO” stands for the International Standards Organization, and “15919” is a numeric code associated with the standard.

IAST and ISO-15919 are largely similar. But they differ in a few letters:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>a</th>
<th>ā</th>
<th>i</th>
<th>ī</th>
<th>u</th>
<th>ū</th>
<th>r̥</th>
<th>ṭ̥</th>
<th>l̥</th>
<th>ṭ̥</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ā</td>
<td>ai</td>
<td>ō</td>
<td>au</td>
<td>am</td>
<td>ah</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ka</td>
<td>kha</td>
<td>ga</td>
<td>gha</td>
<td>Ňa</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ca</td>
<td>cha</td>
<td>ja</td>
<td>jha</td>
<td>Ňa</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ṭa</td>
<td>ṭha</td>
<td>ḍa</td>
<td>ḍha</td>
<td>ṇa</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ta</td>
<td>tha</td>
<td>da</td>
<td>dha</td>
<td>na</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pa</td>
<td>pha</td>
<td>ba</td>
<td>bha</td>
<td>ma</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ya</td>
<td>ra</td>
<td>la</td>
<td>va</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>śa</td>
<td>ša</td>
<td>sa</td>
<td>ha</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Sanskrit software
Why use Sanskrit software?

Sanskrit software is the name for various computer programs that process Sanskrit. We think every Sanskrit learner today should know the basics of using Sanskrit software. Here's why:

- **Dictionaries**: With modern tools, you can search multiple Sanskrit dictionaries in less than a second.
- **Analysis tools**: If you don't recognize a word ending, you can quickly search a database of all Sanskrit words and expressions.
- **Search**: If you want more information on a Sanskrit word or verse, you can search the entire Internet in moments.
- **Writing**: There are several online communities of Sanskrit learners. And if you can write Sanskrit, you can join these communities and communicate with them.

In this topic, we will discuss the basics of Sanskrit software and share some of our favorite programs.
The Harvard-Kyoto system

Devanagari and romanized Sanskrit use symbols that we can't find on a standard computer keyboard. So it can be difficult to type either of these on a computer. This is a problem because if we can't type Sanskrit, we can't write Sanskrit content or use various Sanskrit tools.

One workaround to this problem is to define some way to map English letters to Sanskrit letters. In the examples below, the text on the left and the right is the same. But the text on the left uses the Harvard-Kyoto system, and the text on the right uses either Devanagari or romanized Sanskrit:

saMskRtA bhASA → सस्मक्षता भाषा

zrIbhagavAn uvAca → śrībhagavān uvāca

The Harvard-Kyoto system is one of the easiest mappings to learn, and it the mapping that most Sanskrit tools and software expect. Here is how the system is defined:
a  ā  ē  ī  u  ū  ṛ  ṭ  ṭa
A  ā  ē  ī  u  ū  ṛ  ṭa
I  ā  ē  ī  u  ū  ṛ  ṭa
u  ū  ṛ  ṭa
R  ṛ  ṭa
RR  ṛ  ṭa

l  ī  a  ē  o  au  am  aḥ
lR  ī  a  ē  o  au  am  aḥ

ka  kha  ga  gha  ŋa  ca  cha  ja  jha  ṇa
ka  kha  ga  gha  Ga  ca  cha  ja  jha  Ja

ṭa  ṭha  ᵇa  ḍha  ṇa  ta  tha  ᵇa  ḍha  na
Ta  Tha  Da  Dha  Na  ta  tha  ᵇa  ḍha  na

pa  pha  ba  bha  ma
pa  pha  ba  bha  ma

ya  ra  la  va  śa  śa  sa  ha
ya  ra  la  va  za  Sa  sa  ha
How to type in Sanskrit

Sanskrit can be challenging to type because it needs symbols that we can’t find on a standard computer keyboard. Thankfully, there are several great solutions that make it easy to type Sanskrit on a computer.

Transliteration software

Transliteration is when we convert one script into another. With the help of transliteration software, we can first write Sanskrit using English letters then use the program to convert our work into the script we want.

For example, we can use the Harvard-Kyoto system that we learned about in the previous lesson. By writing in Harvard-Kyoto and using a transliteration program, we can convert our text into the script we want:

saMskRtA bhASA → सांस्कृति भाषा

saMskRtA bhASA → saṃskṛtā bhāṣā

We are biased, but we recommend our own Sanscript program, which has been one of the most popular transliteration tools for over a decade.

Input method editors

Transliteration software is convenient and easy, but there are more powerful tools that are a little faster. Input method editors convert what you type into your desired script in real time. The downside is that they require much more setup work. Here are our recommendations:

- For Windows users, we recommend Baraha.
- For Mac OSX users, we recommend Lipika IME.
How to use a Sanskrit-English dictionary

A Sanskrit-English dictionary lets you search for Sanskrit words and see their definitions in English. If you plan to learn Sanskrit through English, a good Sanskrit-English dictionary is invaluable.

There are two Sanskrit-English dictionaries worth knowing about. These are:

- V. S. Apte's The Practical Sanskrit-English Dictionary, which is especially clear
- The Monier-Williams Sanskrit-English Dictionary. This is the main dictionary used by English-speaking Sanskrit scholars in the West.

Both of these dictionaries were created in the 19th century. But thanks to the Cologne Digital Sanskrit Dictionaries project, both of these dictionaries are freely available and searchable online.

In this lesson, we'll learn how to use the Cologne interface to search for different words. Let's search for the following two words:

कृष्णस्य
krṣṇasya

अकुर्वत
akurvata

Step 1: Find the root or stem

Sanskrit is a highly inflected language. A nominal stem can use dozens of different endings, and a verb root might have thousands of different forms.

Rather than store all of these forms, these dictionaries store just the essential information. For verbs, they store the verb root. For nominals, they store the nominal stem.

So our first step is to convert the words above to their stem and root forms.
Step 2: Transliterate your word

Many dictionary programs understand only a small number of different scripts. The Cologne interface understands Devanagari and romanized Sanskrit. But if you don't have an IME available on your computer, it is more convenient to enter your search in Harvard-Kyoto:

कृष्ण → kRSNa
क्र → kR

Step 3: Search!

By default, the Cologne interfaces expect Harvard-Kyoto and produce output in Devanagari. If you like these settings, you can try searching for your word in either the Apte dictionary or the Monier-Williams dictionary.

Final thoughts

Once you get used to an online dictionary, it's difficult to go back to paper books. With practice, you can quickly and accurately find the information you need.

We're working on our own learner-friendly dictionary interface. If you would like to help us test it, let us know.
Lists
Grammatical Terms

This page contains almost all of the technical terms we use on learn sanskrit.org. Each row in the table below contains four items:

- The term as it appears on our website
- The standard English term, which you will generally see used in Western resources
- The standard Sanskrit term
- Specialist terms used in Paninian grammar

General terms
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>learnsanskrit.org</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Sanskrit</th>
<th>Paninian</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>adjective</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>viśeṣaṇa</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adverb</td>
<td>—</td>
<td></td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>agreement</td>
<td>—</td>
<td></td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aspirated</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>mahāprāṇa</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ātmanepada</td>
<td>middle voice</td>
<td>ātmanepada</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>case</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>vibhakti</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>case 1 (subject)</td>
<td>nominative case</td>
<td>prathamā</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>case 2 (object)</td>
<td>accusative case</td>
<td>dvityā</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>case 3 (&quot;with&quot;)</td>
<td>instrumental case</td>
<td>tṛtyā</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>case 4 (&quot;for&quot;)</td>
<td>dative case</td>
<td>caturtī</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>case 5 (&quot;from&quot;)</td>
<td>ablative case</td>
<td>pañcamī</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>case 6 (&quot;of&quot;)</td>
<td>genitive case</td>
<td>saṣṭhī</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>case 7 (&quot;in&quot;)</td>
<td>locative case</td>
<td>saptaṃ</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>case 8 (address)</td>
<td>vocative case</td>
<td>sambodhana</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>causal verb</td>
<td>causative</td>
<td></td>
<td>nijanta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>command mood</td>
<td>imperative mood</td>
<td>ājñā</td>
<td>loṭ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>compound (word)</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>samāsa</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>compound vowel</td>
<td>diphthong</td>
<td>saṃdhyakṣara</td>
<td>ec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>conditional mood</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>saṃketa</td>
<td>lrī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>consonant</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>vyañjana</td>
<td>hal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>desiderative</td>
<td>—</td>
<td></td>
<td>sannanta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>distant future tense</td>
<td>periphrastic future</td>
<td>anadyatana-bhavisyat</td>
<td>luṭ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>distant past tense</td>
<td>perfect</td>
<td>parokṣa-bhūta</td>
<td>liṭ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>doubling</td>
<td>reduplication</td>
<td>dvitva</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dual (number)</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>dvivacana</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dvandva</td>
<td>copulative compound</td>
<td>dvandva</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>feminine gender</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>strīliṅga</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>first person</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>uttama</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gender</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>liṅga</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-tvā</td>
<td>gerund</td>
<td>ktvānta</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>--------</td>
<td>--------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grammatical case</td>
<td>(see “case”)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grammar</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>vyākaraṇa</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hard palate</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>tālu</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>heavy (syllable)</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>guru</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>intensive</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>yañanta</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>light (syllable)</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>laghu</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lip</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>oṣṭha</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>long vowel</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>dīrgha</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>masculine gender</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>puṃliṅga</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>medium vowel</td>
<td>full grade vowel</td>
<td>guṇa</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nasal</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>anunāsika</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>neuter gender</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>napuṃsakaliṅga</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>noun ending</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>sup</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>noun from verb</td>
<td>denominative</td>
<td>nāmadhātu</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>noun</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>nāma</td>
<td>subanta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>number</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>vacana</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>object</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>karman</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>option mood</td>
<td>present optative</td>
<td>vidhi</td>
<td>vidhi-liṅ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ordinary future tense</td>
<td>simple future</td>
<td>bhaviṣyat</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ordinary past tense</td>
<td>imperfect</td>
<td>anadyatana-bhūta</td>
<td>laṅ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>participle</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>parasmaipada</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>person</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>puruṣa</td>
<td>puruṣa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plural (number)</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>bahuvacana</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>point of pronunciation</td>
<td>point of articulation</td>
<td>uccāraṇa-sthāna</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prefix</td>
<td>(see “verb prefix”)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>present tense</td>
<td>present indicative</td>
<td>vartamāna</td>
<td>laṭ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>primary (suffix)</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>kṛt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pronoun</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>sarvanāman</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>recent past tense</td>
<td>aorist</td>
<td>bhūta</td>
<td>luṅ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Term</td>
<td>Definition</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sibilant</td>
<td>ūśman</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sandhi</td>
<td>ūśman</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>second person</td>
<td>madhyama</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>secondary (suffix)</td>
<td>taddhita</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>semivowel</td>
<td>antahṣṭha</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>short vowel</td>
<td>hrasva</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>simple vowel</td>
<td>samānākṣara</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>singular (number)</td>
<td>ekavacana</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>soft palate</td>
<td>kaṇṭha</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stem (of a noun)</td>
<td>prātipadika</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stem (of any word)</td>
<td>anga</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stop</td>
<td>sparśa</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>strong vowel</td>
<td>vṛddhi</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subject</td>
<td>kartṛ</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>suffix</td>
<td>pratyaya</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>syllable</td>
<td>aksara</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>third person</td>
<td>prathama</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tooth</td>
<td>danta</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ubhayapada</td>
<td>ubhayapada</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unaspirated</td>
<td>alpaprāṇa</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uninflected word</td>
<td>avyaya</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unvoiced</td>
<td>aghoṣa</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>verb class</td>
<td>gaṇa</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>verb ending</td>
<td>tiṅ</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>verb prefix</td>
<td>upasarga, gati, cvi, ...</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>verb root</td>
<td>dhātu</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>verb</td>
<td>tiṅanta</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>verbless sentence</td>
<td>tīṅanta</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voiced</td>
<td>ghoṣavat</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vowel</td>
<td>svara</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nominal sentence</td>
<td>ac</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Other terms

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>learnsanskrit.org</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Sanskrit</th>
<th>Paninian</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bhū class</td>
<td>Class 1</td>
<td>bhvādigana</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tud class</td>
<td>Class 6</td>
<td>adādigana</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cur class</td>
<td>Class 10</td>
<td>curādigana</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>krī class</td>
<td>Class 9</td>
<td>kryādigana</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rudh class</td>
<td>Class 7</td>
<td>rudhādigana</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>su class</td>
<td>Class 5</td>
<td>svādigan</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tan class</td>
<td>Class 8</td>
<td>tanādigana</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>div class</td>
<td>Class 4</td>
<td>divādigana</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hu class</td>
<td>Class 3</td>
<td>juhotyādigana</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ad class</td>
<td>Class 2</td>
<td>adādigana</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>